

# TEACH YOUR TRS-80<sup>TM</sup> TO PROGRAM ITSELF

BY DAVID BUSCH



# Also by the Author from TAB Books Inc.

No. 1698 25 Games for Your TRS-80 Model 100

Radio Shack, TRS-80, TRSDOS, and Scripsit are trademarks of the Radio Shack Division of Tandy Corporation.

Microsoft BASIC and Microsoft BASIC Compiler are registered trademarks of Microsoft Corporation.

PET, VIC-20, and Commodore 64 are trademarks of Commodore Business Machines.

NEWDOS/80 is a trademark of Apparat, Inc.

PACKER is a trademark of Cottage Software.

#### FIRST EDITION

FIRST PRINTING

Copyright © 1984 by TAB BOOKS Inc.

Printed in the United States of America

Reproduction or publication of the content in any manner, without express permission of the publisher, is prohibited. No liability is assumed with respect to the use of the information herein.

Library of Congress Cataloging in Publication Data

Busch, David D. Teach your TRS-80 to program itself!

Includes index.

1. TRS-80 Model I (Computer)—Programming. 2. TRS-80 Model III (Computer)—Programming. 3. TRS-80 Model 4 (Computer)—Programming. I. Title. II. Title: Teach your T.R.S.-80 to program itself! III. Title: Teach your TRS-eighty to program itself! QA76.8.T1833B87 1984 001.64'2 84-2525 ISBN 0-8306-0798-6 ISBN 0-8306-1798-1 (pbk.)

# Contents

|   | Acknowledgment                     |     |
|---|------------------------------------|-----|
|   | Introduction                       | A   |
| 1 | Word Counter                       | 1   |
| 2 | REM-over                           | 8   |
| 3 | Titler                             | 15  |
| 4 | Documenter                         | 22  |
| 5 | Tabber                             | 34  |
| 6 | Screen Editor                      | 42  |
| 7 | DataBase Starter                   | 57  |
| 8 | Program Proofer                    | 84  |
| 9 | Automatic Programmer Documentation | 101 |
| 0 | Visual Maker                       | 112 |
| 1 | Global Replacer                    | 134 |

| 12 | Menu Maste   | r  | 139 |
|----|--------------|--|-----|
| 13 | Lister       |  | 151 |
| 14 | Error Trappe | r  | 157 |
| 15 | Chain Zappe  | ŗ  | 173 |
| 16 | Translator   |  | 181 |
| 17 | Document S   | orter  | 200 |
| 18 | Some Tips    |  | 212 |
|    | Appendix:    | Converting Model III Programs to the Model 4 | 220 |
|    | Index        |  | 225 |

# **Acknowledgment**

The material in Chapters 4, 6, 7, 8, and 16 originally appeared in different form in *Interface Age Magazine*.

# Introduction

Yes, your TRS-80 I/III or 4 can write its own programs. Instead of laboriously crafting program lines and subroutines that will display a series of instructional "frames" on the screen, you can let your computer do all that work. You need only design the screen, using word processing commands, and tell the computer how long you want that frame displayed. The TRS-80 is perfectly capable of writing a complete program that will do exactly that, without the need for you to write one single line of code.

Or your TRS-80 can compose subroutines for you. Do you need some disk input/output routines and a string array to store data in? Some data lines, perhaps? A menu? But you're not too eager to write the code and figure out the proper ON . . . GOTO lines? That task is a snap for the automatic TRS-80.

On the other hand, you may be weary of calculating tabs for neatly formatted screen displays. Wouldn't it be nice to just type PRINTTAB(T) and let the computer figure out what value T should be? Say no more. Your wish is well within the capabilities of the Fort Worth Wonder.

As fabulous a set of tools as the TRS-80 line has been, most users save only half the time they could with their computers. Because I write dozens of programs a year, one of the first things I did was write a number of programs that do nothing more than write other programs for me. One of the first, and one I use more than any other, was Screen Editor. It is simply a BASIC program that allows

drawing on the screen any menu, title block, instructional screen, or other material that will be needed in a program. Then, at the press of the ENTER key, the screen just designed is magically transformed into program lines. Ten minutes of coding can be accomplished in a minute or less. (Since I have compiled into machine code the BASIC Screen Editor shown in this book, the chore takes no more than a second or two!)

Given the right tools, such as the 17 utility programs here, an hour spent programming can be more fruitful than several hours with manual methods. A third (or more) of the program lines in some of the examples in this book were prepared by other programs listed. Some programs were even used to write enhanced versions of themselves.

All the programs in this book will work with TRS-80 Model I, Model III, or Model 4 computers, and were written and tested on all three. Some will run equally well with Model 4s as Model IIIs. Tabber, for example, asks the user if tabs should be centered for a 64-column screen, or an 80-column screen. Because they are written in BASIC and use few PEEKs, the programs are readily transferable.

Those which PEEK into video memory, however, work on the Model 4 only when the computer is operated in Model III mode. Since the Model 4 has not been long on the market, and software is still sparse, most users will have a Model III operating system, such as TRSDOS 1.3, NEWDOS/80 2.0, or LDOS 5.1 to use Model III applications programs on their Model 4. Those users, then, can run some of the programs in this book in Model III mode, create the programs of their choice, and then transfer them to Model 4 formatted disks for running. A few changes may have to be made to account for the 80-column screen once the programs have been transferred. In fact, Tabber, a program included in this book, can do part of this chore for you.

Just as PEEKs and POKEs have been avoided wherever possible, other statements that are "DOS dependent" have been avoided. In most cases, strictly BASIC syntax common to all TRS-80 computers is used. That is, all Radio Shack Model I/III/4 computers have similar disk input/output routines for sequential files. Exotic file types are not used. In a few cases, special features of popular disk operating systems are incorporated as options. Program Proofer, for example, asks if the user is running NEWDOS/80. If so, the program will use CMD"O" to sort the variable and word list. Menu Master calls up various DOS com-

mands using the 'CMD"n" 'syntax. Since users will customize this program anyway, those with TRSDOS 6.0 or LDOS can change the CMD to SYSTEM, and make other minor changes.

This book is only a jumping-off point. Many of the programs were adapted from other programs. Visual Maker is based on Screen Editor. Global Replacer is descended from Tabber. Similarly, you can take ideas and suggestions here and develop programs of your own that will streamline your BASIC development work. In addition, there are some ideas in Chapter 18 for using as shortcuts other programs you already own, such as word processors or keyboard utilities.

The 17 utility programs in "The Automatic TRS-80" actually write programs for you, modify existing software, or give your programs new capabilities and power. The novice or experienced programmer can save hours of time on every program written. Some of the examples were used to write programs in this book, or to modify themselves. Here is a brief outline of the programs:

**Visual Maker.** Design a custom "slide" to appear on the screen of your TRS-80, using graphics or alphanumeric characters. Tell Visual Maker how long you want that slide to be displayed. Then go onto the next slide. Or, you can draw from a library of slides you have compiled.

Once your show is assembled into the order you want, Visual Maker will write a complete BASIC program to display the slides you designed for the intervals requested. *No* programming is required. You can even repeat the shows if you like, or end with a menu that allows the user a choice of which show to see next.

DB Starter. Weary of writing custom database management programs from scratch? DB Starter will do the basic skeleton for you. Enter the number of menu choices, and the prompts to be included in the menus. It will design the menu for you. Tell the program you want input/output routines, feed in a few parameters, and it will write the I/O modules automatically. DB Starter will also construct the necessary ON...GOTO lines, and insert REMarks at line numbers where the programmer needs to build up the BASIC skeleton. Your first several hours of programming are taken care of for you.

**Tabber.** Want to center your screen output for prompts and other messages? Just type PRINTTAB(T) in every line you want centered. This program will go through an entire program, calculate how long the message is, and write a new program line that TABs the proper number of spaces. It works with 80-column Model 4 screens, as well as 64-column Model I and III screens.

**Proofer.** Find misspelled keywords, mismatched parentheses, and other errors *before* runtime. This program helps you debug, and provides a list of variable names used in the program as a bonus.

**Error Message.** If you are impressed with the long error messages of Disk BASIC, this program will knock you flat. Append Error Message to your own BASIC program and insert the appropriate ON ERROR GOTO line. Any error will then be spelled out in detail—with tips on how to find the exact error in your program. It is an excellent utility for novice programmers, or anyone tracking an elusive bug.

**Screen Editor.** You can use word processing command style to design a custom screen. Then, press ENTER. This program writes the BASIC program lines you need to reproduce your custom screen in your own program.

**Documenter.** Type out the instructions to go with your latest program. Documenter will divide them up and write BASIC program lines that present them as instructions at the beginning of your program. It includes everything, even "Hit any key for next page" prompts.

Menu Master. This program will let your computer AUTO on power-up into a custom menu that summons the programs you use most often, gives you directories of your disk drives, and does a number of other small but useful jobs.

Word Counter. Why write a program to count words in files, when you could do it manually almost as fast? Or could you? Suppose you were writing a 10,000-word term paper, or a 70,000-word book which had to come out at a contracted number of printed pages. Word Counter will be far more useful to you than you might think.

Global Replacer. Specify a string in your program of file—it does not have to be a keyword—and this program will replace it with the string of your choice.

**REM-over.** When you're down to your last blank disk or your last few bytes of memory at 3 o'clock in the morning, you'll appreciate the value of stripping the REM statements from a program. REM-over does it for you in seconds.

**Lister.** Do you envy those glitzy-looking listings but hate the work involved in formatting them, and begrudge the memory those embedded spaces kill? Lister will help you out.

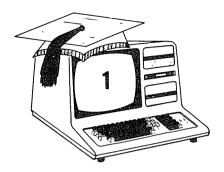
**Translator.** This program creates a Spanish-language tiny BASIC to use as an educational aid, and then "compiles" the code

created into runnable BASIC. The methodology used in Translator also shows you how to write your own tiny BASICs in French or the language of your choice.

**Chain Zapper.** If you're a NEWDOS/80 user, do you dread the mailman bearing envelopes full of ZAPs for your operating system? Chain Zapper writes chain files automatically to apply the patches to your DOS.

**Titler.** Create title listings for your programs simply by entering the title itself. Titler will do the formatting, add your name and address, and write the program lines for you.

The goal of this book is to help you to remember, when you're slaving over a hot keyboard at 3 A.M., that computers are the servants of mankind—and not vice versa.



# **Word Counter**

Why not let your TRS-80 write its own programs? After all, much program writing is nothing more complicated than building something from an inventory of prefabricated subroutines. Many programs have a great deal in common; it is the parameters which change. Wouldn't it be simpler just to provide the parameters—and let the computer do the routine stuff?

After all, one program may require a line like, FOR N=1 TO 100, while the next will need FOR N=1 TO 200. Yet, each time, the programmer had to type in the "FOR N=1 TO" part. The reason the computer never knew enough to supply the "FOR N=1 TO" is that nobody *told* it to. The TRS-80 Model I/III and 4 computers can do almost anything in the area of program-writing, if they are only told exactly what to do.

"Applications generators" and other programs which write other programs are old hat. They have been around for a number of years, and can be purchased for large computers as well as small. The concept behind them is simple: many programs have modules that are much like those used in other software. Yet, in many cases, the computer programmer writes a routine from scratch each time it is needed. Why not build a library of routines and let the computer draw on them as needed to write its own programs?

The reason a TRS-80 Model I/III/4 can write its own BASIC programs lies in its ability to load two types of files into BASIC from disk. The normal way a BASIC program is saved is in compressed

format. That is, BASIC keywords are tokenized, and, instead of the entire keyword, a single byte representing that keyword is loaded onto the disk. Rather than store the five letters that make up "PRINT", BASIC normally just stores 178, the decimal number that represents "PRINT". When you type SAVE "filename", a program is stored on disk in this form.

However, we can also type SAVE"filename", A. Then, the program will be saved in noncompressed "ASCII" format. That is, every letter and number will be stored byte for byte on the disk, exactly as the program appears when listed. The BASIC interpreter has the capability of doing this conversion for us.

An ASCII file is nothing more than a text file. It is possible to load a noncompressed program into a word processing program such as Scripsit, edit it using powerful global search and replace commands, and then save it back to disk in ASCII form.

Because of this dual capability we can also create programs using a word processor, or, in the case of the programs in this book, through the use of sequential disk files, which are also ASCII files. The short program below serves as an example:

- 10 OPEN "O", 1, "TEST"
- 20 PRINT#1,"10 PRINT"; CHR\$(34); "THIS IS A TEST"; "CHR\$(34)
- 30 CLOSE 1

That test program will write a single line to the disk under the filename "TEST." That line will be, if loaded from BASIC, a short program in the form:

#### 10 PRINT"THIS IS A TEST"

We could also "build" the program lines from our own parameters. Try this short program:

- 10 INPUT"Enter line number desired:";LN
- 20 INPUT"Enter message desired:";MESS\$
- 30 INPUT"Want it to be PRINT or LPRINT"; CH\$
- 40 IF CH\$="PRINT" OR CH\$="LPRINT" GOTO 60
- 50 GOTO 30
- 60 OPEN "0",1,"TEST"
- 70 PROG\$=STR\$(LN)+CHR\$(32)+CH\$+CHR\$(32)+CHR\$(34)+ MESS\$+CHR\$(34)
- 80 PRINT#1,PROG\$
- 90 CLOSE 1

Most of the programs in this book with program-writing routines do nothing more than assemble program lines in this manner. Sometimes the input comes from the user. Other times it is calculated. Still other times, some of the programs PEEK the video memory (from 15360 to 16384) to see what has been printed to the screen, and use that.

But the common thread is the use of ASCII files, which are programs, as if they were data files. The first program presented, "Word Counter," illustrates the principle, though it does not create any new program files itself. Instead, Word Counter reads in an ASCII file, and counts the number of words. Most commonly these files will be word processing text files, like those created by Scripsit. However, Word Counter could just as easily be used to count the number of words in a program.

Most of the techniques used in this book will be repeated in later programs. Each will be explained in detail the first time it is used. So, early programs are short because explanations are frequent; later, longer programs will use many techniques that have been previously explained and will thus require fewer discussions.

Programs in this book frequently access other programs that have been stored in ASCII form on disk. You *must* save a program to be used by another program in ASCII form, using the ", A" option. If, in running one of the programs here, you see garbage on the screen, you probably forgot to save the program in ASCII.

Word Counter is no exception. It will count words in a program file the same as a text file, but only if both are in ASCII. The operator is asked to enter the name of the file to be processed in line 200. That file, F\$, is opened, and one line is input from the disk. The line is loaded by means of LINEINPUT#1 in line 220. IN-PUT#1will accomplish much the same thing, except that it will not

| A\$<br>AW<br>C\$<br>CHAR<br>CU<br>F\$ | Stores text line being examined. Average word length in text. One-character string from middle of line. Number of characters in whole file. Counter of number of words in file. Text file to be counted. |
|---------------------------------------|--|
| FL<br>L\$<br>N<br>SW                  | FLAG indicating end of file reached. Last character encountered. Loop counter. Number of standard words in text.   |

Fig. 1-1. Variables used in Word Counter.

```
120 PRINT TAB(2)"text file, or any file that has been stored to disk in ASCII "
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        110 PRINT TAB(6)"This program will count the number of actual
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   In addition, it also provides the
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     140 PRINT TAB(2)"'standard ' five-character words, and the
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      90 PRINT TAB(21)"Writer's Word Counter "
化学校校校校校校校校校校校校校校校校校校校校
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         75 * *** Instructions ***
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     130 PRINT TAB(2) "format.
                                                     Word Counter
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      average character
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                               total number of "
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                           80 CLS:PRINT:PRINT
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       words in a "
                                                                                                                                                        60 CLEAR 4000
70 DEFINT A-Z
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                PRINT
```

```
PRINT TAB(2)"length of the words in the text. "PRINT:PRINT TAB(17)"== Hit any key to continue ==
```

- IF INKEY\$="" GOTO 170 CLS:PRINT:PRINT
- \*\*\* Access Disk File \*\*\*
- PRINTTAB(15)"Enter name of file to count:";
  - LINEINPUT F\$
- OPEN "I", I, F\$
- LINEINPUT #1, A\$
- \*\*\* If End of File Found, Set Flag to 1 \*\*\* 225
- IF EOF(1) THEN FL=1 230
- \*\*\* Add Length of A\$ to Total Characters in File \*\*\* 235
- 240 CHAR=CHAR+LEN(A\$)
- \*\*\* Loop to look at each character in A\$ \*\*\* 245
- 250 FOR N=1 TO LEN(A\$)

Fig. 1-2. Program listing for Word Counter.

```
C$=MID$(A$,N,1)
IF C$=CHR$(32) AND L$<>CHR$(32) THEN CU=CU+1.
L$=C$
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  PRINTTAB(17)"NO. OF FIVE-CHARACTER WORDS =",SW
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   PRINTTAB(21)"AVERAGE WORD LENGTH =",AW
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                CLS
                                                                                                                                                                     PRINTTAB(23)"NUMBER OF WORDS =", CU
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            A$="Y" OR A$="Y" THEN RUN ELSE
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             PRINTTAB(4)"Check another file?"
                                                                                                                               " *** Print out Results ***
CLS:PRINT:PRINT
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         A$=INKEY$:IF A$=""GOTO 430
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   CLOSE
*** Run again? ***
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   PRINTTAB(10)"Y/N"
                                                                                   IF FL=1 GOTO 320
                                                                                                                                                                                                             AW=CHAR/CU
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            SW=CHAR/5
                                                                                                          GOTO 220
                                                                                                                                                                                          PRINT
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        PRINT
```

Fig. 1-2. Program listing for Word Counter. (Continued from page 5.)

accept string delimiters such as commas and quotation marks, which are commonly used in both text and program lines. LINEIN-PUT imposes no such restriction. It accepts everything up to the next carriage return. This will be the end of a program line, or a carriage return in the text itself.

To search for a word, we need to first decide just what a word is. The easiest thing is to consider a word to be more or less, a group of letters preceded and followed by a space. "CODEWORD" is one word, even though two real words are embedded in it. "OH! NO!" is two words. The punctuation is not part of each word, but, for the purposes of this program it is considered so. This is because Word Counter has been written to look for each space that is preceded by a non-space. Counting spaces would be an inaccurate way of counting words; the program instead looks at each character, and, when it finds a space, looks to see if the preceding character was a space. If not, the end of a word has been deemed to have been reached.

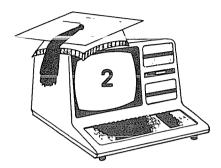
Referring to the variable chart and program listing (Figs. 1-1 and 1-2), we see that each line input, stored in A\$, is examined one character at a time in a FOR-NEXT loop beginning at line 250. The loop repeats from 1 to the length of A\$. Each time through, C\$ is assigned the value of the next character in the string through the use of MID\$(A\$, N, 1).

Before the loop goes back to look at the next character, the current character is stored in L\$ (line 280), and becomes the last character.

If C\$ is a space (CHR\$(32)), the program looks at the last character checked, L\$, to see if it was a space. If it was *not* a space (that is, it was a character) then the program assumes the end of a word, since no word contains an embedded space. Thus the word counter CU, is incremented by one.

Once the program has looked at every character in the string, it drops down to line 300, where the end-of-file flag is tested. If it is equal to one, meaning the EOF marker has been reached, the program goes to line 320 to present the results of the word count. Otherwise, the program goes back to line 220 to input another line.

When the file is finished, the program prints the number of words, CU, and then calculates the average word length, which is the number of characters (CHAR) divided by the number of words. The number of characters is also divided by five to total the amount of "standard," five-character words as well.



### REM-over

In Chapter 1 we explored opening an ASCII disk file, either text or program, reading it in line by line, and then examining the string of characters in order to count the number of words. The next step is to alter the file in some way, and then write a new, changed file to disk. Several of the programs in this book are based on that principle, and the first of these is "REM-over."

REM-over will read in a disk file, such as that shown in Fig. 2-1, and will print to disk a new file that is similar to the old one. The only difference is that when the program encounters a remark, designated either by "REM" or its apostrophic abbreviation ('), the remainder of the program line will be truncated. If a line consists only of a line number and a remark, the line will be deleted from the program entirely. The result will be a new program with all of the comments removed, as shown in Fig. 2-2. Depending on the number of remarks included in the original program, the new, remarkless version may be significantly smaller, and therefore consume less memory space.

Ordinarily, one might think that removing remarks from a program would be ridiculously simple. Since the TRS-80 ignores anything after REM or,' a program could simply search for those two strings. However, to make things more interesting, you should realize that REM or' in quotes doesn't count. That is, using REM as part of an input prompt or in a PRINT statement does *not* appear to be a remark to the computer. For example:

- 10 ' Test of Program REM-OVER 20 REM Will Test REMOVAL of RI
- 20 REM Will Test REMOVAL of REMARKS
- 30 ' This Remark will be removed.
- 40 PRINT: PRINT: REM This one will be removed.
- 50 PRINT"This REMARK: REM Will NOT be removed."
- 60 PRINT"This one won't": REM This one will.
- 40 PRINT: PRINT:
- 50 PRINT"This REMARK: REM Will NOT be removed."
- 60 PRINT"This one won't"

Fig. 2-1. Target program for REM-over.

#### 10 PRINT"This is NOT a REMark.": REM But this IS.

REM-over takes care of this stipulation by simply looking at each program line for quotation marks as well as remarks. If a REM appears after one quote, but before the second, then it is contained within the quotation marks. (This assumes that the programmer has not mismatched quotes, and has included two for every prompt.)

The program, Figs. 2-3 and 2-4, begins by asking the operator for the filename of the program which will have its remarks REM-oved. This filename, F\$, is used to form the filename of the output file automatically. First, in line 100 the second filename, F1\$, is formed by adding "/REM" onto it. If the filename happens not to have an extension, as, for example, when F\$="TEST", then the new filename "TEST/REM" will be legal. A check is made later in line 100 to see if this is so. F1 is equal to INSTR(F\$,"/"). If F1=0, that is, F\$ does *not* contain a slash and extension, then the program goes to line 110.

However, if a slash is found and F1 does not equal zero, then the portion of the filename up to the "/" (LEFT\$(F\$,F1-1)) is taken,

- 40 PRINT: PRINT:
- 50 PRINT"This REMARK: REM Will NOT be removed."
- 60 PRINT"This one won't"

Fig. 2-2. Target program with remarks REM-oved.

| A\$<br>B\$<br>F\$<br>F1\$<br>N | Line of program loaded from disk. Middle string of program line. Filename of program being processed. Filename of output file. Loop counter. Position to begin INSTR search. |
|--------------------------------|--|
| Q1<br>Q2<br>R<br>T\$           | Position of first quote mark. Position of second quote mark. Position of remark. String remaining after remark deleted.  |

Fig. 2-3. Variables used in REM-over.

and "/REM" tacked on. Next, both files are opened, and a single line is input in line 140. Variable P, which is the position at which the search for REMs begins, is set equal to one. Thus, the initial search for remarks will begin at the first character of A\$.

Because both REM and 'can indicate remarks, two searches must be conducted. First, in line 160, the program checks for,' and, if an apostrophe is found, assigns variable R with the position of the suspected remark. Control then branches to line 200. If no apostrophe is located, the program next checks for "REM", in line 180. If no remark is found, then the program line is already remark-free, and the program branches to line 350.

Possible remark lines are examined further at a routine beginning at line 200. There, Q1 is assigned the value equal to the position of a quote mark. If none is found, a remark has indeed been located, and control passes to line 260. If a quote is detected, then REM-over looks at the rest of the program line, beginning at position Q1+1 for a second quote. That value is Q2. If the position of the remark, R, is less than Q1 (the remark appears *before* the first quote, or is more than Q2 (it appears *after* the second quote), then a remark is verified, and the program goes to line 260.

If neither condition is true, then the alleged remark is actually within the quotes, and is disqualified. The program instead makes P equal to the next position after the second quote (Q2+1), and returns control to line 160 to see if any possible remarks exist after position P. In this way, an entire multi-statement line can be looked at, section by section, to detect all remarks.

When a valid remark is located, the program takes all of the program line up to the remark itself, using A\$=(LEFT\$, R-1), as in line 260. This, in effect, truncates the program at the remark.

We are not finished yet. After all, some program lines consist

```
PRINTTAB(9)"Enter name of program to have REMARKS removed:"
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                           100 F1$=F$+"/REM":F1=INSTR(F$,"/"):IF F1=0 THEN GOTO 110 ELSE
F1$=LEFT$(F$,F1-1)+"/REM":GOTO 110
110 OPEN "I",1,F$
120 OPEN "O",2,F1$
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    135 ' *** Load Program Line ***
                                                                                                                                                       *** Enter filename ***
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      IF EOF(1) GOTO 380
                                                                                      我我我我我我我我我我我我我
******
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                               140 LINEINPUT #1,A$
                                                                                                                                                                              CLS:PRINT:PRINT
                                            REM-over
                                                                                                                                                                                                                           90 LINEINPUT F$
                                                                                                             CLEAR 5000
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      P=1
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    150
                                                                                                                                                        65
```

Fig. 2-4. Program listing for REM-over.

```
Q1=INSTR(P, A$, CHR$(34)):IF Q1=0 GOTO 260
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   A$=LEFT$(A$,R-1)
FOR N=1 TO LEN(A$)
B$=MID$(A$,N,1)
IF ASC(B$)<48 OR ASC(B$)>57 GOTO 310
                                                                                                          *** Find Quotes, if Any ***
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   *** Strip off REMARKS ***
155 * *** Check for REMARKS ***
                                                                                                                                                       Q1=Q1+1
Q2=INSTR(Q1,A$,CHR$(34))
IF R<Q1 OR R>Q2 GOTO 260
                                             IF R<>0 GOTO 200
R=INSTR(P,A$,"REM")
                              R=INSTR(P, A$,""")
                                                                            IF R=0 GOTO 350
                                                                                                                                                                                                                      GOTO 160
                                                                                                                                                                                                    P=02+1
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       255
                                                                                                           195
                                                                                                                                          200
210
220
230
240
250
```

```
T$=MID$(A$,N)

IF T$="" GOTO 130

IF T$=" GOTO 130

IF RIGHT$(A$,1)=":" THEN A$=LEFT$(A$,(LEN(A$)-1))

' *** If line not empty, print to disk ***
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             A$=INKEY$:IF A$="" GOTO 420
IF A$="Y" OR A$="y" THEN RUN ELSE CLS
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     PRINTTAB(21)"Process another file?"
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         PRINTTAB (29) " (Y/N) "
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        *** Again? ***
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 PRINT: PRINT
                                                                                                                                                    PRINT#2,A$
GOTO 130
                                                                                                                                PRINT A$
                                                                                                                                                                                             CLOSE
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        385
```

NEXT

300

Fig. 2-4. Program listing for REM-over. (Continued from page 11.)

of just a line number and a remark. Cutting off the remark leaves only the line number. This is a bit untidy, and a waste of computer memory as well. So, the program cycles through a FOR-NEXT loop from 1 to the length of A\$. Each time through, the string variable B\$ is assigned the value of the middle character at position N. This character is checked to see that it is a number in the range 0-9, since all program lines begin with numbers. As soon as B\$ does NOT equal a number, REM-over knows that the line number is complete, and control drops down to line 310.

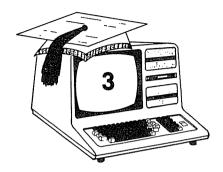
There, T\$ is assigned the rest of A\$. If T\$ is empty, or consists only of a space, then the program knows it has found an "empty" program line, and loops back to line 130 *without* printing anything to the disk. That line has been deleted from the program entirely.

If T\$ does have characters, a check is made to see if the final character is a colon, as would be the case if a remark followed a colon on a multi-statement line:

#### 10 PRINT"HELLO": REM This is a remark.

If a colon is the last character, it is deleted in line 340. Then A\$ is printed to the screen, so the operator can monitor the progress of the program, and also printed to the disk. Control goes back to line 130, where a check for the end-of-file is made, and another program line input from the disk.

That's all there is to REM-oving the REM-arks from your programs.



# Titler

Now we are ready for some real action. Making a few simple changes in an existing program is kid stuff compared with the "real" thing. That is, generating a new, never-before-existing program line from your very own parameters. That's the function of Titler. This program generates program title blocks like the one shown in Fig. 3-1, which can be merged with your own programs. You don't have to tediously write the program lines yourself, format the title block, or even supply your name and address every time. The program will do that for you. As an added feature, your friends can also use the program by supplying their own names.

This last capability is the result of what are known as "default" values. That is, the programmer defines the contents of variables (Fig. 3-2) storing name, address, and city. Every time the program is run, you simply hit ENTER when asked whether or not a new name and address should be input. (The question is posed in line 120, Fig. 3-3.) Then an INKEY\$ loop repeats until the operator presses a key, or hits ENTER. If "N" or ENTER (CHR\$(13)) was pressed, then the program drops down to line 280; N\$, AD\$, and CT\$ remain as they were defined in lines 70-90. The default values are used.

If "Y" or some other key is pressed, however, the program will ask for a name, address, city, state, and zip, and then assemble the string variables N\$, AD\$, or CT\$ on its own. In that way a regular

Fig. 3-1. Sample title produced by Titler.

user can be accommodated, while leaving a path open for a friend to use the program as well.

Next, the user is asked for the title of the program, and this is stored in TITLE\$. The program checks to see which of the four strings—TITLE\$, name, address, or city—is the longest and will thus determine how wide the title block will be. This width, A, is defined in line 350 as the length of the longest string, plus four. The extra four characters will leave room for a space at each end of the longest string, plus an asterisk used as the border.

A disk file named "Title" is opened, and a subroutine at line 760 is accessed to produce a string equal to the next line number to be used in our miniprogram. This routine increments a counter, LC,

| A\$<br>A | Used in INKEY\$ loop. Length of widest line in title.                |
|----------|--|
| AD\$     | User's address.  |
| B<br>B   | Difference between length of line to be incorporated in title and A. |
| B1       | Number of spaces before line.  |
| B2       | Number of spaces after line.   |
| C\$      | User city.   |
| CT\$     | Name of user's city, state, zip.                                     |
| LC       | Line counter   |
| LN\$     | Program line currently being built.                                  |
| N        | Loop counter.  |
| S\$      | User state.  |
| TITLE\$  | Title of program.  |
| Z\$      | User zip code.   |

Fig. 3-2. Variables used in Program Titler.

```
PRINTTAB(15)"(Just Hit <ENTER> to use Defaults)" A$=INKEY$:IF A$=""GOTO 140
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      IF A$=CHR$(13) OR A$="N" OR A$="n" GOTO 280
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            PRINT:PRINTTAB(20)"Enter Name and Address?"
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  PRINTTAB(23)"Title Block Writer"
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       155 *** Enter Name, etc. ***
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                               90 CT$="Your City, State, Zip"
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       80 AD$="Your Address Here"
                                                                                                 教徒教徒教教教教教教教教教教教教教教教教
水水水水水水水水水水水水水水水水水水水水
                                                  Program Titler
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                N$="Your Name Here"
                                                                                                                                                                            *** Defaults ***
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         CLS:PRINT
                                                                                                                           60 CLEAR 1000
                                                                                                                                                                              65
```

Fig. 3-3. Listing for Program Titler.

160 CLS:PRINT

```
PRINTTAB(20)"Enter title of program:"
                                   PRINTTAB(24)"Enter Address :"
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  LEN(AD$)>A THEN A=LEN(AD$)
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     IF LEN(CT$)>A THEN A=LEN(CT$)
                                                                                                                                                 PRINTTAB(24)"Enter Zip Code
                                                                                                           PRINTTAB(25)"Enter State :"
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                IF LEN(N$)>A THEN A=LEN(N$)
                                                                       PRINTTAB(26)"Enter City :"
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                           " *** Open Disk file ***
PRINTTAB(26)"Enter name
                                                                                                                                                                                     $Z+m m+S$+m'm+S>=$LD
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                               OPEN "O", 1, "TITLE"
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            A=LEN(TITLE$)
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            INPUT TITLE$
                                                                                                                                                                                                        CLS:PRINT
                                                        INPUT AD$
                                                                                                                                                                    INPUT Z$
                 INPUT N$
                                                                                           ENPUT C$
                                                                                                                               INPUT S$
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        A=A+4
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   CLS
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                360
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             355
```

```
LN$=LN$+"*"+STRING$(B1,32)+TITLE$+STRING$(B2,32)+"*"
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                               LN$=LN$+"*"+STRING$(B1,32)+AD$+STRING$(B2,32)+"*"
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       LN$=LN$+"*"+STRING$(B1,32)+N$+STRING$(B2,32)+"*"
                                                                                                                                    B=A-LEN(TITLE$):B1=INT(B/2):B2=B-B1
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         B=A-LEN(CT$):Bl=INT(B/2):B2=B-B1
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                B=A-LEN(AD$):Bl=INT(B/2):B2=B-B1
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      B=A-LEN(N$):Bl=INT(B/2):B2=B-Bl
                                                                            LN$=LN$+"*"+STRING$(A,32)+"*"
                                                                                                                                                                                                             LN$=LN$+"*"+STRING$(A,32)+"*"
                  LN$=LN$+STRING$(A+2,"*")
                                                                                                                                                                         PRINT #1, LN$
GOSUB 760
                                    PRINT#1, LN$
                                                                                               PRINT#1, LN$
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                PRINT#1, LN$
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         PRINT#1, LN$
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   PRINT#1, LN$
                                                       GOSUB 760
                                                                                                                  GOSUB 760
GOSUB 760
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      GOSUB 760
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  GOSUB 760
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            GOSUB 760
                                                                                                                                  450
460
                                                                                                                 440
                                                                                                                                                                                                                               500
                                                                                                                                                                                           480
                                                                                                                                                                                                             490
```

Fig. 3-3. Listing for Program Titler. (Continued from page 17.)

```
PRINTTAB(29)"MERGE ";CHR$(34);"TITLE";CHR$(34);"."
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                          PRINT"Renumber your target program so that first"
PRINT"line number is higher than 10, then type"
LN$=LN$+"*"+STRING$(B1,32)+CT$+STRING$(B2,32)+"*"
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       760 LC=LC+1:LN$=STR$(LC)+"""+CHR$(32)
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   *** Increment Line numbers ***
                                                         LNS=LNS+"*"+STRING$(A,32)+"*"
                                                                                                                                                                                                    *** Final Instructions ***
                                                                                                                       LN$=LN$+STRING$(A+2," *")
                  PRINT#1, LN$
                                                                              PRINT#1, LN$
                                                                                                                                            PRINT#1, LN$
                                                                                                  GOSUB 760
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         CLS:PRINT
                                      GOSUB 760
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            RETURN
                                                                                                                                                              CLOSE
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        PRINT
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    755
                                                                                                                                                                                                    695
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         700
                                                           640
                                                                              650
                                                                                                  099
```

Fig. 3-3. Listing for Program Tilter. (Continued from page 19.)

each time it is called. LN\$ is then formed by converting the counter LC to a string value, and adding an apostrophe (because our title block will consist of remarks) and a space, CHR\$(32). Then the subroutine RETURNs to the main program.

There, LN\$ is first added to a string equal to A+2 in length, consisting entirely of asterisks. So, the first line might look something like this:

1'\*\*\*\*\*\*\*\*\*\*\*

That line is PRINTed to the disk in line 400. Then the sub-routine at 760 is called again, and a new line is similarly formed. This line consists of a line number one greater than the last, the apostrophe, an asterisk followed by a string of spaces equal to A, and another asterisk. This line will look like this:

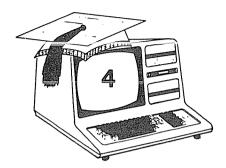
2'\*

The following line, containing the title itself, will have an asterisk, some spaces, the title, some more spaces, and another asterisk. The number of spaces will be divided as equally as possible fore and aft, so that the title will be centered. These spaces are calculated by subtracting the length of the title from A, dividing the result by 2, and assigning that value to the number of spaces preceding the title, B1. The number of spaces following is the number remaining after subtracting B1 from B. This is done, instead of simply dividing B by two, because the result will not always be even. It is sometimes necessary to make B1 one space larger than B.

This centering procedure is repeated every line when the name, address, and city are included in the title block. The block is finished when a program line identical to line 1 is written to the disk.

The last step is to close the file. The user is instructed to renumber the target program so that the first line number is larger than 10, and then MERGE it with the TITLE file.

We have created a program from nothing. Next, things get a little more complicated.



# Documenter

Although I tried to impress you in the last chapter with the power of Titler, the program was actually small potatoes. A bunch of program lines consisting of nothing more than remarks isn't a real program. After all, a title block doesn't even *do* anything. "Documenter," on the other hand, writes real programs that really do something. Best of all, your own input is kept to a minimum.

One of the difficulties of writing software is developing documentation. At one end of the spectrum is the simple, interactive, self-prompting program with multiple error traps that can be run by the unsophisticated user with no instruction at all. The other extreme is complex software, such as disk operating systems or compilers, that require entire books or manuals to use properly.

Documenter is intended for the broad range between, i.e., those programs that require a few pages of quick instructions at the beginning of the program to make running the software a little simpler. The best part about this program is that it will format and page instructions automatically, write the necessary code, and then append them onto the beginning of your BASIC program. Procedure for using the program is as follows:

- 1) Renumber your BASIC program so that the starting line number is at least 100, and preferably 200 or higher. This insures that your code will not overlap the instructions tacked onto the beginning.
  - 2) Save the program to disk in ASCII form. Then, load and run

Documenter with a disk containing the target program in one of the disk drives.

- 3) Input instructions as desired. These may be typed in normally, with backspace used to rub out previous characters. However, a graphics block appears on the screen in the upper right corner. This block indicates the 50-character mark, the "hot zone" that approaches the right hand margin used in the instruction output. If a word ends within this zone, the program will automatically drop down to the next line. If you see that the word you are typing will extend more than three or four characters past the beginning of the hot zone, select an appropriate place for hyphenation, and insert a hyphen. The program will recognize this character and drop down a line at that point.
- 4) When all copy for instructions has been input, enter an ampersand, which was chosen as a control character.
- 5) At this point, the program will create a group of directions, an instruction set, so to speak, from your input. These will be in proper program form as listed at the end of this chapter. When complete, the instructions will be appended to the target program you specified when Documenter was run.
- 6) Line 1 of the new program should be deleted, because it contains the MERGE instructions. The program can then be run as desired. Several pages of your instructions, developed to your own specifications, will be displayed prior to the initial program lines of the original software.

Variables used in Documenter are shown in Fig. 4-1, and the program (listed in Fig. 4-2) works as follows. The user first specifies the name of the previously stored (in ASCII) target program. This is input into a string variable, TP\$. Next, a subroutine

| <u> </u>  |   |
|-----------|---|
| A\$       | Character input from keyboard through INKEY\$ |
| B\$       | String of characters input as copy.           |
| С         | Counter for string array PROG\$(n)            |
| L\$(n)    | Border array.                                 |
| LN\$      | Stores program lines as compiled.             |
| N         | Loop counter.                                 |
| N1-N6     | Loop counters.                                |
| P\$(n)    | Print @locations.                             |
| PROG\$(n) | Finished program.                             |
| TP\$      | Target program.                               |
| ļ         |   |

Fig. 4-1. Variables used in Documenter.

```
in
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                           100 PRINT "Your target program must have been saved
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         110 PRINT "(ASCII) format, using the ',A' option." 120 LINEINPUT "Enter name of target program :";TP$
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                125 * *** READ BORDER ROUTINE INTO ARRAY ***
                                                                                                                                             DIM L$(12), PROG$(100), LN$(100)
C=1
                                                                                                                                                                                                                    85 * *** Instructions ***
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   FOR N=1 TO 10
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            READ L$(N)
                                               * Documenter *
                                                                                             於於於於於於於於於於於於於於於
经本班的各种各种的各种的
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      non-compressed"
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    NEXT N
                                                                                                                       CLEAR 8000
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     90 CLS:PRINT
```

```
to quit
                                                                                                                                        190 DATA "FOR N=1 TO 63", "PRINT @ N, CHR$(159);", "NEXT N"
200 DATA "FOR N=833 TO 895", "PRINT @ N, CHR$(190);", "NEXT
N", "FOR X=0 TO 41", "SET(1, X)", "SET(127, X)", "NEXT X"
210 DATA 136, 200, 264, 328, 392, 456
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      IF A$=CHR$(8) THEN B$=LEFT$(B$, LEN(B$)-1):GOTO 310
IF A$=CHR$(13) THEN GOTO 340
IF A$="&" GOTO 390
*** READ 'PRINT @ ' LOCATIONS INTO ARRAY ***
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             Enter '
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     215 * *** INPUT INSTRUCTION COPY ***
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                           PRINT "Enter instructions now.
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            A$=INKEY$:IF A$="" GOTO 260
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  PRINT @ 114, CHR$(191)
                                                        FOR NI=1 TO 6
                                                                                    READ P$(N1)
                                                                                                                NEXT NI
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 CLS:PRINT
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                B$=B$+A$
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        PRINT
```

Fig. 4-2. Program listing for Documenter.

```
REM
                                                                                   260
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         LN$(1)="1 MERGE "+CHR$(34)+TP$+CHR$(34)+":STOP:
                                                                                   IF A$=CHR$(32) OR A$=CHR$(45) GOTO 340 ELSE
                                                                                                                                                                                                       *** BUILD FIRST LINES OF MERGER PROGRAM
                                                *** STORE B$ IN PROG$(N) ARRAY ***
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             LN$(N2+2)=STR$(N2+2)+" "+L$(N2)
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                           DELETE THIS LINE AFTER MERGER"
                                                                                                                PRINT CHR$(29); CHR$(26);
B$=""
PRINT A$;
IF LEN(B$)<50 GOTO 260
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                           FOR N2=1 TO 11
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                          LN$(2)="2 CLS"
                                                                                                  PROG$(C)=B$
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       390 PROG$(C)=B$
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        GOSUB 660
                                                                                                                                                                      GOTO 260
                                                                                                                                                   C=C+1
                                                 325
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         400
410
420
                                                                                                                                                                                                       385
```

```
+CHR$(34)+PROG$(N3+N4)+CHR$(34)+";"
                                                                                                                                                         GOSUB 660:LN$(LN)=LN$(LN)+"PRINT @ 714,"+CHR$(34)
                                                                                          GOSUB 660:LN$(LN)=LN$(LN)+"PRINT @ "+P$(N4+1)
                                                                                                                                                                                                        GOSUB 660:LN$(LN)=LN$(LN)+"IF INKEY$="+CHR$(34)
' *** BUILD 'PRINT @ ' LINES WITH EACH ELEMENT ***
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  LN$(LN)=LN$(LN)+"PRINT @ "+P$(N5)+","
                                                                                                                                                                                                                             +CHR$(34)+" GOTO "+STR$(LN)
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        +"STRING$(55,32);"
                                        FOR N3=1 TO C STEP 6
FOR N4=0 TO 5
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     FOR N5=1 TO 6
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            GOSUB 660
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             NEXT N5
                                                                                                                                       NEXT N4
475
                                                                                                                                                                                                        530
                                                                                        500
```

NEXT N2

470 LN=N2

Fig. 4-2. Program listing for Documenter. (Continued from page 25.)

```
*** RUN MERGER PROGRAM TO COMBINE TARGET/INSTRUCTIONS ***
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  * *** INCREMENT LINE NUMBERS AND INITIATE NEW LINE ***
590 GOSUB 660:LN$(LN)=LN$(LN)+"IF INKEY$="+CHR$(34)
                                                                      595 " *** SAVE MERGER PROGRAM TO DISK ***
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 660 LN=LN+1:LN$(LN)=STR$(LN)+" ":RETURN
                         +CHR$(34)+"GOTO "+STR$(LN)
                                                                                                                                                                       PRINT #1, LN$(N6)
                                                                                                                     OPEN "O", 1, "MERGER"
: FOR N6=1 TO LN
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      RUN "MERGER"
                                                                                                                                                                                            : NEXT N6
                                                                                                                                                                                                                   CLOSE 1
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      655
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       645
                                                                                                                        009
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      650
```

Fig. 4-2. Program listing for Documenter. (Continued from page 27.)

that was parsed and entered as DATA lines is read into a string array, L\$(n). This 10-line subroutine prints a graphic border around the screen of the TRS-80. The various portions of the routine, minus line numbers, are stored in data lines at 190-200.

Next, a group of numbers (data line 210) is read into a second array, P\$(n). These numbers correspond to six screen locations that will be used in PRINT @ routines to be created later. For example, the first item of data, 136, will be used to PRINT @ 136 either instructional material or blanks to erase that portion of the screen—without disturbing the graphics border around the edges.

At this point, the person running the program is urged to begin entering the instructional copy. The right margin hot zone is first placed on the screen, in line 250. Eventually this will scroll out of sight, but the other lines of copy will constitute a sufficient reminder for most.

An INKEY\$ strobing loop in line 260 allows keyboard input of any character. When A\$ does not equal null (""), control drops to line 270, where a check is made to see if the backspace character (CHR\$(8)) has been entered. If so, the string that stores the current input, B\$, is rubbed out from the right side by one character.

If ENTER has been hit (CHR\$(13)), control passes to line 340; otherwise, unless the escape ampersand has been entered, A\$ is both added to B\$, and printed to the screen. If B\$ is not greater than 50 characters, then the program returns to the INKEY\$ line for additional input.

When 50 characters have been entered, the time is ripe to find the end of a word. Control always drops to line 330, where Documenter looks for a space, CHR\$(32), or a hyphen, CHR\$(45). If one is not found, INKEY\$ is accessed for more input.

When the length of B\$ is more than 50 and a space or hyphen is recognized, then B\$ is stored in a string array, PROG\$(n). Then B\$ is nulled and C (the PROG\$(n) counter) is incremented by one; the next time that portion of the program is called, B\$ will be deposited one element farther down in the array. This portion of the program is used whenever ENTER is hit during the INKEY\$ loop.

Input may continue until "&" is entered. At this point, the last value of B\$ is stored in PROG\$(C), and construction of the program subroutine begins. Program lines are stored in a string array, LN\$(n). These lines are assembled similarly to the titles in the last chapter. That is, first a program line number is produced, and then the necessary parts of the program line are added to that. The first program line is always line number 1, followed by MERGE, a quote

```
136,STRING$(55,32);
200,STRING$(55,32);
264,STRING$(55,32);
328,STRING$(55,32);
392,STRING$(55,32);
456,STRING$(55,32);
136,"program will drop down a line when you reach the
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      31 PŘINT @ 392,"this as well as a space.";
32 PRINT @ 456," Your target program must be saved in ASCII
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             29 PRINT @ 264,"characters past the graphics block in the upper
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      The program will
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  @ 200, "of a word. If a word will extend more than a
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   right, ";
30 PRINT @ 328,"you need to insert a hyphen.
PRINT @ 714,"HIT ANY KEY TO CONTINUE";
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            33 PRINT @ 714,"HIT ANY KEY TO CONTINUE";
                      IF INKEY$="" GOTO
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      IF INKEY$="" GOTO
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       recognize ";
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  28 PRINT
                                                                   PRINT
                                                                                           PRINT
                                                                                                                                                                                      PRINT
                                                                                                                                                             PRINT
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         form ";
```

Fig. 4-3. Sample program produced by Documenter.

```
than 200";
                                                        line numbers higher
                                                                                                               TO CONTINUE";
36, STRING$ (55, 32
         200, STRING$ (55, 32
                  264,STRING$(55,32
                                     392, STRING$ (55, 32
                                              456,STRING$(55,32
                                                                                                                                                              328, STRING$ (55, 32
                                                                                                                                                                                456,STRING$(55,32
                            328, STRING$ (55, 32
                                                                                                                714,"HIT ANY KEY
                                                                                                                                           200,STRING$(55,
                                                                                                                                                    264,STRING$(55,
                                                                                                                                                                       392,STRING$(55,
                                                                                                                                  136, STRING$ (55,
                                                          have
                                                                                                                                                                                          S
                                                                                                                         GOTO
                                                        "and
                                                                                                                                                                                          INKEY$=" "GOTO
                                                        136,
                                                                                                                         IF INKEY$=""
                                                                           264
                                                                                                                                   യ
                   PRINT
                                      PRINT
                                                                                                                                   PRINT
                                                                                                                                                                                 PRINT
                            PRINT
                                                                 PRINT
                                                                                                                PRINT
                                                                                                                                                               PRINT
                                                                                                                                                                        PRINT
                                                                                                       PRINT
                                                                                                                                            PRINT
PRINT
          PRINT
                                               PRINT
                                                                            PRINT
                                                                                    PRINT
                                                                                              PRINT
                                                                                                                                                     PRINT
                                                         PRINT
                                                                           4444444500000

6450786010000
```

Fig. 4-3. Sample program produced by Documenter. (Continued from page 31.)

mark, and the title of the target program. The second program line is always "2 CLS".

The next few lines are always the lines which write the border routine. They are assembled by adding elements of L\$(n) to the program line number produced by a FOR-NEXT loop beginning at line 430.

Nested FOR-NEXT loops next construct the information pages, divided into six lines per page. So, the outer loop steps from 1 to C (total number of lines) STEP 6. The inner loop determines which PRINT @ location is used in that given program line. Each screen has a "Hit any key to continue" line added, and an INKEY\$ loop.

If all this is a bit unclear, carefully examine the program listing, which is liberally sprinkled with comments. Also, look at the sample program, Fig. 4-3,, which was produced using Documenter. The steps needed to assemble a finished program using operator input will be explained further in later programs. This is just the beginning.



## Tabber

Time for a breather. Tabber is a simple yet elegant little program that will be very useful to you. It creates no new program lines, doesn't make your computer operate 50 percent faster, and won't even make your laundry whiter.

What it will do is automatically center various prompts that are printed to the screen using PRINT or INPUT statements. Instead of sloppy screen formatting, you can have neat copy. It will work with both 64-column screens in the TRS-80 Models I/III, and 80-column screens of the Model 4. Best of all, you need to make only one small change in your programming habits.

To center any prompt, simply type PRINTTAB(T) instead of calculating the proper tab position yourself. See Fig. 5-1. With messages that are going to be PRINTed to the screen, just insert TAB(T). If a program presently includes the prompt after an INPUT or LINEINPUT statement, you will have to do some rewritize, since there is no such thing (yet) as INPUTTAB(n) or LINEINPUTTAB(n) statements for TRS-80 computers. Use the second line, rather than the first in the examples below:

WRONG: 10 INPUT "Enter your name:"; A\$

RIGHT: 10 PRINTTAB(T)"Enter your name:";:INPUT

A\$

(Model 4 users should separate PRINT and TAB, as well as LINE and INPUT, with a space.)

```
10 PRINTTAB(T) "THIS PROGRAM DEMONSTRATES THE USE"
```

- 20 PRINTTAB(T) "OF TABBER/BAS. ANY PROGRAM USING"
- 30 PRINTTAB(T) "THE SPECIAL 'T' TAB WILL HAVE THAT"
- 40 PRINTTAB(T) "PROMPT CENTERED ON THE SCREEN"

Fig. 5-1. Target program to demonstrate Tabber.

You can even run programs using TAB(T) without running them through Tabber. This is especially useful during program development and testing. Simply insert the TAB(T)s as you go along. Until the finished program has been processed by Tabber, all prompts with TAB(T) will be printed flush left, so long as the variable T is not used elsewhere within your program. If not, it will have a default value of zero, and the program will tab zero spaces for each prompt. Then, when the program is done, save it in ASCII form and run Tabber. Tabber will search through each program line. When it finds TAB(T) it will measure the length of the prompt remaining, calculate how many spaces must be tabbed to center that message on a 64- or 80-column screen, and then replace the "T" with an appropriate number. Figure 5-2 shows our target program after Tabber has finished its work.

A few programming tips are included in this program. Menu input routines are one area ripe for improvement. Many programs will offer the operator a choice of actions, listed in a "menu" on the screen. Items from menus can be selected by having the user press the first letter of the menu item name, enter the whole choice, or enter a number that precedes the menu choice.

Having the user type in the whole name is rarely done, because a simple typing error could invalidate an otherwise correct entry. If a person wants a 64-column screen but types 63 instead, it is a shame to make him or her redo the whole entry just for missing by one, or, worse, having the program crash because it doesn't recognize the choice. Entering one character is popular, especially when a menu is accessed frequently. The user can easily memorize which letter triggers which menu choice, because of the mnemonic connection. The following is a typical letter-oriented menu:

(L)oad

(S)ave

(E)xit

(C)ontinue

A problem could occur if two menu choices started with the same letter, and the programmer could not think of a convenient synonym that used another initial letter. In addition, such menus force the

```
10 PRINTTAB(15) THIS PROGRAM DEMONSTRATES THE USET
20 PRINTTAB(15) OF TABBER/BAS. ANY PROGRAM USING
```

Fig. 5-2. Target program with TABs inserted.

non-typist user to hunt around the keyboard for letters that may be widely separated.

Numeric menus, on the other hand, have choices arranged in neat rows across the top of the keyboard. The limitation is that only 10 menu choices can be listed, if we want single-key entry (0-9). Even then we open ourselves to problems, because the simplest input methods could confuse a null entry (just pressing ENTER, for example) with zero. It is possible to check the CHR\$ values of the entries, to differentiate between zero (CHR\$(48)) and ENTER (CHR\$(13)). One could also extend a numeric menu by using hexadecimal notation, following nine with A, B,C,D, or E.

In practice this is seldom needed. Tabber's menu has only two choices, that between 64- and 80-column formatting. However, it also uses a built-in error trap, something that is too often forgotten by beginning programmers. Some will write a menu routine like this:

- 10 PRINT"1.) Load program"
- 20 PRINT"2.) Save program"
- 30 INPUT"Enter Choice"; CH
- **40** ON CH GOTO 100,200

Now, if a naive user enters "L" or "S", or some other letter by mistake, a cryptic "REDO FROM START" message will be displayed. That is of no help at all. Entering a number larger than two will send the program to the line following 40, whatever that is. This could crash the whole program. We can avoid the REDO message by using CH\$ instead of CH in the INPUT, since strings will accept letters as well as numbers. Converting to numerics, e.g., CH=VAL(CH\$), will send us to our ON CH GOTO line happily—except we still haven't handled the inappropriate input that might result. It is also necessary for the user to remember to hit ENTER before the input is accepted. The user either has to be sophisticated enough to do this on his or her own, or else we have to waste a line to prompt the user to do so.

Since all we want is a single character, why not use INKEY\$ to

<sup>20</sup> PRINTTAB(15) "OF TABBER/BAS. ANY PROGRAM USING"
30 PRINTTAB(15) "THE SPECIAL 'T' TAB WILL HAVE THAT"

<sup>40</sup> PRINTTAB(17) "PROMPT CENTERED ON THE SCREEN"

get it? Then, if the character is not valid, just send control back to the INKEY\$ loop until a proper entry *is* made. That is what is used in "Tabber," the variables and listings for which are shown in Figs. 4-3 and 4-4. Line 120, for example, is an INKEY\$ loop that repeats until a character is pressed. That character, A\$, is converted to a number value, A, in line 130. If A<1 or A>2, the program loops back; otherwise, it sets the value of S to either 64 or 80, as appropriate.

Next, the user enters the filenames for the input and output files, and a single line is loaded from disk, in line 230. The next line looks for an occurrence of "TAB(T)" in the target program line. Since the string "TAB(T)" is likely to be unique, no effort is made to check if it is contained in quotes, or after a remark. Odds are that it will never appear in your program, except where you actually do want to center a prompt. This is mentioned because Tabber did "crash" when it was used to process itself—caused by line 240, in which TAB(T) is contained as part of the program itself, and not before any prompt. In all other cases, TAB(T) will be followed by a prompt and a matched pair of quote marks, but in this case that was not true.

Whenever Tabber finds TAB(T), it looks for the position of the first quote, loads the value of the rest of the program line after that quote, and then cuts off the line following the second quote (line 280). B\$ will then contain only the material in the prompt.

The next step is to measure the length of the prompt, subtract that from S, which is the screen width (either 64 or 80 columns), and divide by 2. The resulting number, D, is the number of spaces that should be tabbed to center the prompt.

A new program line is then assembled in line 310, taking everything that appears *before* the TAB(T), adding that to a string

| A\$  | Program line being examined.              |
|------|---|
| B\$  | Portion of program line.                  |
| C    | Position of "TAB(T)" in program line.     |
| C1   | Position of quote in program line.        |
| D    | Half the difference between prompt length |
| İ    | and display line length.                  |
| D\$  | Amount to tab, added to program line.     |
| F\$  | File to be processed.                     |
| F2\$ | Output file.                              |
| S    | Length of display line, either 64 or 80.  |

Fig. 5-3. Variables used in Tabber.

```
PRINT TAB(12)"ENTER PROGRAM WITH TABS TO BE CENTERED:"
                                                                                                                                                                                                      PRINT TAB(13)"IS PROGRAM FOR 64 OR 80 COLUMN SCREEN?"
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      PRINT TAB(18)"ENTER NAME OF OUTPUT FILE :"
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      * *** Enter Name of File to Process ***
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       PRINT:PRINT TAB(20)"ENTER CHOICE :"
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         A$=INKEY$:IF A$="" GOTO 120
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                PRINTTAB(20)"2.) 80 COLUMN"
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                IF A<1 OR A>2 GOTO 120
IF A=1 THEN S=64 ELSE S=80
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    PRINTTAB(20)"1.) 64 COLUMN"
如於於於於於於於於於於於於於於於於於於於於於於
於
                                                                                                                 我我我我我我我我我我我我我我我我我我我
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 CLS:PRINT:PRINT
                                                                                                                                                                           CLS:PRINT:PRINT
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                           LINEINPUT F$
                                                                                                                                                 CLEAR 1000
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       A=VAL(A$)
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                          155
```

```
Cl=INSTR(C,A$,CHR$(34))+1
B$=MID$(A$,C1)
B$=LEFT$(B$,INSTR(B$,CHR$(34))-1)
D=INT((S-LEN(B$))/2)
                                                                                                                                                                                                       D$=MID$(STR$(D),2)
A$=LEFT$(A$,C+3)+D$+MID$(A$,C+5)
GOTO 240
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       *** Print to Disk ***
                                                             *** Load a Line ***
                                                                                                           C=INSTR(A$,"TAB(T)")
                                                                                                                           IF C=0 GOTO 330
              OPEN "I",1,F$
OPEN "O",2,F2$
                                                                                            LINEINPUT#1, A$
LINEINPUT F2$
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       325
                                                             225
200
210
220
```

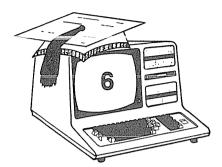
Fig. 5-4. Program listing for Tabber.

330 PRINT#2, A\$

Fig. 5-4. Program listing for Tabber. (Continued from page 39.)

representation of the tab value (the leading space has been deleted in line 300), and finishing off with the rest of the program line, beginning with ")". Thus, the "T" has been deleted and replaced with a number. The program then loops back to line 240 to see if any more TAB(T)'s appear in the program line. This allows Tabber to process multiple TAB(T)s appearing on a single line.

Once the work is finished, or if a line contains no TAB(T)s in the first place, control drops down to line 330, where A\$ is printed to disk and screen. A check is made in line 350 to see if the end-of-file has been reached. If not, the program loops back to line 230 to load another program line from disk. Otherwise, the processing is finished.



## **Screen Editor**

The next three programs in the book, Screen Editor, DB Starter, and Proofer, make up a trilogy (of sorts) called "Automatic Programmer." The three in the Automatic Programmer series are related programs that *might* be thought of as integrated, but they aren't. No data files are transferable from one to the other. However, output from one of three can be processed or combined with output from the others quite easily.

These programs are an attempt to present some professional programming concepts, showing how error traps, help screens, instructional files, etc., can enable programs to be self-documenting and usable even by the neophyte.

All three make use of a fourth program, "Automatic Programmer Documentation," which serves as a help file and introduction to all three. It also is a menu of sorts that can be used to load and run one of the other programs.

The first of the Automatic Programmer series is Screen Editor, which you will find to be one of the most useful programs in this book. I relied heavily on it to write instructional screens for many of the other programs here, and even for itself. With a few minor changes, the program is compatible with the Microsoft BASIC Compiler. A much faster-running compiled version was used, cutting programming time down from a minute or two to a few seconds.

Have you ever wished that you could design your program

menus, instruction screens, and other CRT displays with a word processor or some similar program—and then tell your TRS-80 something like, "Hey, I want my screen output to look like this. Please write a few lines of code for me that will reproduce this in my program."

"Screen Editor" will do exactly that for you. Use it as a screen-oriented text editor to lay out your display exactly as you want it to appear. Then specify a beginning line number, line number increment, and a filename for the finished code. The program will then write a suitable subroutine that can be MERGEd with an existing program to produce the desired display.

Ordinary, line-oriented program input and editing are somewhat tedious when neat, nicely formatted screen layout is desired. It is necessary to use a copy of the TRS-80 Model I/III or 4 screen map, and do a great deal of laborious notation on PRINT@locations, or POKEs to video memory. Even less complicated layouts require calculating TAB positions and other time-consuming tasks. Consider the work that would be involved in programming a display to provide the menu in Fig. 6-1.

With Screen Editor, simply use the arrow keys to move the cursor around on the full screen. Press character keys to place alphanumerics where desired. The layout can be quickly done by eye. Then, hit ENTER, specify what line numbers are desired for this subroutine, and collect a finished program module like Fig. 6-2 from your disk a few minutes later. There, stored in ASCII form and ready for merging will be 16 program lines that reproduce what you designed on the screen. Instead of 15 or 20 minutes of coding, RUNning the program to check the appearance of the output, making changes, and so forth, you have three to five minutes of typing with a wordprocessor-like tool.

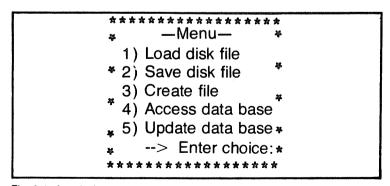


Fig. 6-1. A typical program menu.

```
20
    CLS
30 PRINT TAB( 5) ***********
40 PRINT TAB( 5) n ☆
50 PRINT TAB( 5) **
                    SCREEN
60 PRINT TAB( 5) " *
                    EDITOR
70 PRINT TAB( 5) **
80 PRINT TAB( 5) ***********
100 PRINT TAB( 25) *************************
110 PRINT TAB( 25) # TYPICAL EXAMPLE SCREEN #
130 PRINT
140 PRINT
150 PRINT TAB( 14) This is a screen prepared by
the Screen Editor "
160 PRINT
170 PRINT
180 PRINT
n n ;
      A$=INKEY$:IF A$="" GOTO 200
200
```

Fig. 6-2. Example of program produced by Screen Editor.

The trick is accomplished by PEEKing into video memory, noting what character (if any) has been placed there by the user, and then assigning each screen line to a separate element of a string array, L\$(n). Then, each of the elements in L\$(n) are used to assemble an appropriate program line which PRINT the entire line to the user's screen. If, say, line one consists of four spaces, fifty-six asterisks, and four more spaces, that entire line will be PRINTed in the resulting program. No PRINT@'s or other calculations need to be made.

Screen Editor, in other words, reproduces your screen arrangement, spaces and all. It may not be the most memory-efficient way of invoking a desired screen within your program, but for disk users with 32K or 48K of memory available, the waste will be negligible compared to the time saved.

Actually, a nifty technique is used to eliminate the leading and trailing spaces. As the program looks at each video line in turn, it sets a BFLAG when it encounters the first non-space character, and an EFLAG when it encounters the last non-space character on the line.

In assembling the finished program lines, it constructs a PRINTTAB statement that tabs to the position of the first non-space. The following characters, spaces and all, are reproduced until the last non-space, when a closing quote is added. Thus, a line like:

Would not be turned into a program line like this:

10 Print" Hello! "

Instead, the line would read:

## 10 PRINTTAB(10)"Hello!"

The program is divided into two main sections. The first allows user input of the screen design. An INKEY\$ keyboard strobing loop looks for input (line 120). If ENTER has been pressed (CHR\$(13)), control drops down to the video memory peeking/program assembly section. Otherwise, Screen Editor looks at the character input to see if it was an arrow key (character strings 8,9,10, and 91). If so, one of four subroutines which move the cursor in the indicated direction are accessed.

The cursor is not allowed to move off the top of the screen, nor past the 15th line of the display. To check for this condition, each subroutine first looks to see whether or not the proposed position

| A\$ B C CU E EFLAG F\$ IC L\$ LN\$(n) LN\$ N N1-N9 PR\$ S9 SP | Character input from keyboard, through INKEY\$ Beginning of video memory. Cursor character. Counter End of video memory. End of character line flag. Filename of output file. Increment to increase line number by. End of line character, either ";" or "" Stores finished program lines. Program line currently being built. Loop counter. Loop counters. Program line being read from video memory. Position in filename of "/" Space (CHR\$(32)) as a cursor character. |
|---|---|
| 1   | ,   |
| t<br>Z  | Value PEEKed in video memory. Position of cursor.   |
| Z1  | Check to see if middle of screen reached.   |

Fig. 6-3. Variables used in Screen Editor.

```
B=15360:E=16319:CU=1:Z=B:C=43:SP=32
LA$=STRING$(64,"*")
                                      A$=INKEY$:IF A$="" GOTO 120
                   Screen Editor
                                                                                                                                                         * *** Instructions? ***
                                                         70 CLEAR 10000
80 DEFINT A-Y
90 ON ERROR GOTO 1570
                                                                                                                                                                                                                  TO
                                                                                     DIM LN$(400)
                                                                                                                                                                                                                  FOR N8=1
                                                                                                                                                                                     GOSUB 330
GOSUB 200
                                                                                                                                                                                                        GOTO 240
                                                                                                GOTO 140
                                                                                                                   RETURN
                                                                                                                                                                            CLS
                                                                                                                                                                            160
170
180
190
200
                                                                                       100
                                                                                                110
120
130
140
150
                                                                                                                                                         155
```

```
You may also type 'H' or 'HELP' to most input
                                                                                                                                                                                                              PRINT"*"; TAB(17);"-- Do you want instructions ? --";
                                                                                                                                                                                RUN"AUTOPROG/DOC" ELSE 280
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         Automatic Programmer
                                                                                                                                                                 RUN"AUTOPROG/DOC"
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       Screen Editor
                                                                                                                                                   THEN CLS: GOTO 460
PRINT" *"; TAB(63) " *";
                                                                                                                                                                                THEN
                                                                                                                                                                 THEN
                                                                                                                   PRINT STRING$(64,"*");
GOSUB 120
                                                                                                                                                 OR A$="n"
OR A$="h"
OR A$="Y"
                                                                                                                                                                                                                             • ************
                                                           TAB(63);"*";
                                                                                                                                                              IF A$="H" (IF A$="Y" (
             NEXT N8
                                                                                                                                                 IF A$="N"
                                                                         GOSUB 200
                                                                                        PRINT"*
                                                                                                        prompts.
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         350 PRINT"*
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     360 PRINT"*
                               RETURN
                                                                                        260
                                                                          250
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                           340
```

Fig. 6-4. Program listing for Screen Editor.

```
IF LEFT$(F$, 4)="HELP" OR F$="H" OR F$="h" GOSUB 1690 S9=INSTR(F$,"/")
David D. Busch
                                                                                                                                                                          。
字子。
字子。
                                                                                                                                                       1 *** Enter filename of screen ***
                                                                                                                                                                                                                 LEN(MID$(F$, S9))>4 GOTO 500
Βy:
                                                                                                                                                                          LINE INPUT" ENTER FILE NAME
                                                                          FOR N8=1 TO 100
                                                                                                                PRINT:PRINT:PRINT GOSUB 500
                                                                                                                                                                                                       S9=0 GOTO 580
                                                                                   LN$ (N8)=""
                                                                                                       LN=10:IC=10
                                                                                              NEXT N8
                                                                                                                                    GOTO 610
370 PRINT"*
                   380 PRINT#
                                       RETURN
CLS
                                                        CLOSE
                                                                 CU=1
                                                                                                                                                                           500
500
500
500
500
                                       495
```

```
You may enter any alphanumeric characters or
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      690 PRINT"large graphics block replaces the cursor when at the
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                          680 PRINT"Only the first fifteen lines of the screen may be
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                              660 PRINT TAB(5)"Use the arrow keys to move the '+' cursor
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 PRINT TAB(13)"CUSTOM SCREEN DESIGNING MODULE
IF VAL(MID$(F$, S9+1, 1))>0 GOTO 500 IF LEN(F$)>12 GOTO 500
                                                                                                                             IF F$="" THEN F$="TEST"
                                                                                                                                                                      *** Instructions ***
                                                               IF LEN(F$)>8 GOTO 500
IF F$="" GOTO 500
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      670 PRINT"screen.
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 around the "
                                                                                                                                                                                                              CLS:PRINT
                                              GOTO 610
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                              symbols.
                                                                                                          RETURN
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   PRINT
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      used.
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             Z=B
                                           570
580
590
600
610
                                                                                                                                                                      615
```

Fig. 6-4. Program listing for Screen Editor. (Continued from page 47.)

exact "

```
ğ
700 PRINT"center of the screen, as an aid to centering. (Does
                                            710 PRINT"when <space> bar is used instead of right arrow key
                                                                                                                                           Screen will
                                                                                             720 PRINT"You may write over any text on the screen, draw
                                                                                                                                         730 PRINT"When you are satisfied, hit <ENTER>.
                                                                                                                                                                                             740 PRINT"white while your data are captured.
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                          PRINT TAB(15)"-- HIT ANY KEY TO BEGIN
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             A$=CHR$(13)POKE Z, SP: GOTO 1210
A$=CHR$(91)THEN 890
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 * *** Look for keyboard input ***
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  A$=CHR$(10)THEN 970
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                           A$=CHR$(9)THEN 1050
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  Move Cursor ***
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     A$=CHR$(8)THEN
                                                                                                                         borders, etc. "
                                                                       to position) ";
                                                                                                                                                                                                                      PRINT: PRINT
                           not appear
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     GOSUB 120
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                           GOSUB 120
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            A=ASC(A$)
                                                                                                                                                                     painted "
```

```
860 POKE Z, A
870 IF Z+1<E THEN Z=Z+1: POKE Z, C
880 GOTO 790
890 IF Z-64<B THEN 790
900 POKE Z, SP
910 Z=Z-64
920 Z1=Z-15360
930 IF Z1/32=INT(Z1/32)THEN C=191
940 POKE Z, C
950 C=43
960 GOTO 790
970 IF Z+64>E THEN 790
970 IF Z+64>E THEN 790
970 IF Z+64>
1000 Z1=Z-15360
1010 IF Z1/32=INT(Z1/32)THEN C=191
1020 POKE Z, SP
990 Z=Z+64
1040 GOTO 790
1040 GOTO 790
1050 IF Z+1>E THEN 790
1050 POKE Z, SP
```

Fig. 6-4. Program listing for Screen Editor. (Continued from page 49.)

```
" *** Peek Screen Routine ***
       IF Z1/32=INT(Z1/32)THEN C=191
                                                                                 IF Z1/32=INT(Z1/32)THEN C=191
                                                                                                                                                                           FOR N=0 TO 1023 STEP
                                                                                                                                                LN$(CU)=LN$(CU)+"CLS"
                          C=43
GOTO 790
IF Z-1<1 THEN 790
POKE Z, SP
                                                                                                                                                                                     BFLAG=0
                                                                                                                                                                                              EFLAG=0
                                                                                                                                       GOSUB 1520
                                                                        Z1=Z-15360
Z1=Z-15360
                                                                                                                                                                                                        N3=0
                  POKE Z, C
                                                                                                                                                         LN=LN+IC
                                                                                                             GOTO 790
                                                                                                                                                                  CU=CU+1
                                                               z=z-1
                                                                                           POKE
                                                                                                     C=43
                                                                                                                                        1210
1220
1230
1230
1250
1250
1260
                                                     1140
1150
1160
1170
                                                                                                    1190
                                                                                                                          1205
```

```
+CHR$(34)+MID$(PR$, 1, EFLAG-(BFLAG-2))+CHR$(34)+L$
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      LN$(CU)=STR$(LN)+" PRINT TAB(" +STR$(BFLAG-1)+")"
                                                                                                   IF T<>32 THEN BFLAG=N3: EFLAG=N3 ELSE 1380
                                                                                                                                                                    IF RIGHT$(PR$, 1)=CHR$(32)THEN PR$=LEFT$(PR$,
                                                                                                                                                                                                   IF EFLAG=64 THEN L$=";" ELSE L$=""
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        LN$(CU)=LN$(CU)+CHR$(34)+CHR$(34)+";"
                                                                                                                 PR$=PR$+CHR$(T)
IF T<>32 THEN EFLAG=N3
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        LN$(CU)=STR$(LN)+" PRINT"
                                                                POKE N1+15360, 191
IF BFLAG>0 THEN 1360
                                                                                                                                                                                                                      IF BFLAG=0 THEN 1440
                                                T=PEEK (N1+15360)
                FOR NI=N TO N+63
                                  N3=N3+1
                                                                                                                                                                                    LEN(PR$)-1)
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       GOTO 1450
                                                                                                                                                     NEXT NI
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        LN=LN+IC
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        CU=CU+1
PRS=""
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         NEXT N
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       1460
1470
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        1480
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      1440
                                                                                                                                                                                                                      1410
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       1450
                                               1320
                                                                                 1340
1350
1360
                                                                                                                                                   1380
                                                                                                                                                                    1390
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     1420
```

Fig. 6-4. Program listing for Screen Editor. (Continued from page 51.)

```
1500 LN$(CU)=LN$(CU)+" "+"A$=INKEY$:IF A$="+CHR$(34)+CHR$(34)+"
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                               PRINT TAB(15) "Hit any key to resume program"
                                                                                                                                                                                               PRINT TAB(20)"**** UNKNOWN ERROR
                                                                                                                                                                                                              PRINT TAB(25)"IN LINE "; ERL
                                                                                                                                      *** Error Trap ***
                                                                                               LN$ (CU) = STR$ (LN) +"
                                                                                                                                                                                                                               FOR N9=1 TO 500
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                               CLS:PRINT:PRINT
                               GOTO"+STR$ (LN)
                                                                                                                                                                                PRINT: PRINT
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                              RESUME 400
GOSUB 1520
                                                                                                                                                                CLS:PRINT
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                GOSUB 120
                                               GOTO 1770
                                                            LN=LN+IC
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                              NEXT N9
                                                                                CU=CU+1
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                              RETURN
                                                                                                              RETURN
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                               PRINT
                                                                            1530
1540
                                                                                                                                      1555
                                                                                                                                                                1560
                                                                                                              1550
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                              1640
```

```
PRINT"You should enter the filename you want -- it must"
                           PRINT"be a legal Disk basic name, or your input will be"
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 CLS
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   PRINTTAB(21) "Produce another screen?"
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             A$="Y" OR A$="Y" THEN RUN ELSE
                                                                       LINE INPUT"ENTER FILENAME :",F$
                                                                                                                  *** Save Screen to Disk ***
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                A$=INKEY$:IF A$="" GOTO 1840
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                PRINTTAB(29)"(Y/N)"
                                                                                                                                                                                       PRINT#1, LN$(N)
                                          PRINT"rejected."
                                                                                                                                                                          FOR N=1 TO CU
                                                                                                                                                            OPEN "O", 1, F$
GOSUB 1630
                                                                                                                                             GOSUB 1630
                                                                                                                                                                                                       NEXT N
                                                                                                                                                                                                                     CLOSE 1
                                                                                       RETURN
                                                          PRINT
1690
                                        1720
1730
                                                                                                                  1755
                                                                                                                                              1760
                                                                                                                                                          1770
1780
1790
1800
1810
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                               1830
1840
               1700
                                                                      1740
```

1 \*\*\* Help \*\*\*

1685

Fig. 6-4. Program listing for Screen Editior. (Continued from page 53.)

(P) for the cursor would be less than 15360 in video memory (defined as B in line 140), or more than 16314 (defined as E in the same line).

If the new move is okay, then a space (SP=32) is POKED into the old location, and C (CHR\$(43), a plus sign) is POKED into the new. Control passes back to the INKEY\$ line for further input. If the character entered is not an arrow key, then that character is POKED to the screen.

The second section of the program, beginning at line 1210, PEEKs at the entire video memory, noting what character appears there. Here the program lines, deposited into string array LN\$(n), are built. After all the screen has been read, an INKEY\$ loop is constructed as a final line, to keep the new program's display on the screen until the user presses a key.

Finally, beginning at line 1760, the elements of LN\$(n) are printed to the disk under the filename specified. The finished screen image is captured in program form for you to use in programs of your own.

Like all the programs in the Automatic Programmer series, Screen Editor has many error traps built in. Entering "Help" or "H" to the input prompts will call up the help file, or display a tip. More complex error traps will be discussed in later chapters.



## DataBase Starter

For the microcomputer user, the self-programming computer is still some time in the distant future. Or is it? There are three things that computers have a knack for: processing data, controlling functions, and constructing designs from smaller building blocks. The first two are simple enough. Ask a computer to add 367 to 598, and it will happily comply. Tell it to send a signal to port X whenever it receives input from port Y, and a computer will gladly control your carburetor, monitor your house, or keep your Boeing 747 on course. When a human is available to provide a list of criteria and parameters, a computer is entirely capable of combining components from an existing library to assemble, or "design" a complex product.

A computer program is nothing more than a design for accomplishing a desired task. Once a human being has determined how to get from point A to point B, it is entirely practical to have a computer choose from a library of subroutines to put together a program. The next program in the "Automatic Programmer" series is "DB Starter," which illustrates the basic concept.

This program will ask the user for certain program parameters, such as whether a "menu" is needed, whether or not data will be stored in a string array, size of the array, and other information, and then "write" a BASIC program skeleton that conforms to these parameters.

Figure 7-1 is a sample program that was written by DB Starter.

```
本子如本本本
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                              非外外外外外
                                                                                                  MENU ********* PRINT
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       REM **** INSERT Start Database SUBROUTINE HERE
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   REM ***** INSERT Update Data SUBROUTINE HERE
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                              REM ***** INSERT Access Data SUBROUTINE HERE
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                              INPUT"ENTER CHOICE : ";CH$
CH=VAL(CH$): IF CH<1 OR CH> 5 GOTO 140
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       ON CH GOSUB 500, 1000, 1500, 2000, 2500
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                           REM ***** LOAD FILE FROM DISK ****
                                                                             FOR G=1 TO 4:READ DTA$(G):NEXT G
                                                                                                                                                                                   LOAD FILE FROM DISK"
                                                                                                                                                                                                      SAVE FILE TO DISK"
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                               INPUT "ENTER FILE NAME :";F$
                                                                                                   我你我我我我我我我我
                                                                                                                                                               Start Database"
                   DATA Name, Address, Phone, Zip
                                                                                                                                            Update Data"
                                                                                                                       Access Datam
                                         DIM DA$( 20, 30),DTA$( 4)
                                                                                                   CLS:PRINT:PRINT"
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      OPEN "I" , I, F$
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         INPUT #1,NF
CLEAR MEM/3*2
                                                                                                                         PRINT" 1.)
                                                                                                                                           PRINT" 2.
                                                                                                                                                                 PRINT
                                                                                                                                                                                    PRINT
                                                                                                                                                                                                        PRINT
                                                                                                                                                                                                                             PRINT
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     1000
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         1500
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            2000
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  500
```

```
REM **** CLEAR SCREEN SUBROUTINE *****
                                                                                                                                                                                                                   REM ***** INKEY$ INPUT SUBROUTINE ****
                                                                      REM ***** SAVE FILE TO DISK *****
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 2630
                                                                                   INPUT "ENTER FILE NAME :";F$
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                A$=INKEY$:IF A$="" GOTO
                                                                                                                                                                                                        CLS:PRINT:PRINT:RETURN
                                                                                                                                             PRINT #1, DA$(N, COL);"
                       [NPUT #1,DA$(N,COL)
FOR N=1 TO NF
FOR COL=1 TO NC
                                                                                                                                 FOR COL-1 TO NC
                                                                                             OPEN "O", 1, F$
                                                                                                                      FOR N=1 TO NF
                                                                                                         PRINT #1,NF
                                   NEXT COL, N
                                                                                                                                                        NEXT COL, N
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            A=VAL(A$)
                                                           RETURN
                                                                                                                                                                                 RETURN
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        RETURN
                                               CLOSE
                                                                                                                                                                     CLOSE
                     2060
2070
                                                                                                                                                                                                                               2630
2640
                                               2080
                                                          2090
                                                                     2500
2510
2520
                                                                                                        2530
2540
                                                                                                                                 2550
                                                                                                                                             2560
                                                                                                                                                        2570
2580
                                                                                                                                                                               2590
                                                                                                                                                                                           2600
                                                                                                                                                                                                      2610
2620
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      650
```

Fig. 7-1. Example of program produced by DB Starter.

The array in line 40 of the example was created and DIMensioned according to user input requirements, just as the menu was constructed and subroutines allocated for later work by the human programmer. Two subroutines relating to disk I/O were actually written entirely by the program. The finished code was then saved to disk. As written, the program will do the following things:

- 1) Ask the user for beginning line number, and desired line number increments.
- 2) Ask if a string array will be used to store data, and, if so, allow the user to specify whether the array will be one- or two-dimensional. The elements that should be DIMensioned are also input.
- 3) A "menu" of reasonable size (i.e., which can fit on a single screen) may be specified. Each choice can be described. Program lines to print the menu to the screen will be created, along with an "enter choice" prompt.
- 4) Each of the menu choices will be assigned a subroutine line number—marked with a REMark—so the programmer can flush them out later. An ON CH GOSUB line will be created, sending control to each of the menu subroutines.
- 5) Disk file I/O subroutines which will save or load data stored in a one- or two-dimensional array are automatically created.
- 6) The user can also specify several other subroutines, such as CLS:PRINT:PRINT, and A\$=INKEY\$: IF A\$=" " GOTO.

DB Starter will, then, create the basics of a simple database management program which must be completed by the programmer. It doesn't complete the program, but does save a great deal of typing time. Arguably, there is a much simpler way of accomplishing nearly the same thing, i.e., write out an all-purpose program containing most-used modules, and then SAVE that program on a convenient disk. When the time comes to create a new program, the user can simply load the general module, delete lines not needed, renumber, and do other minor work to tailor it into a skeleton for the new project. Or structured programming techniques can be used, with common variable names, routines, etc., to build a great many program modules that can be readily transferred from one program to another.

Programs that write other programs make the most sense when developed for the unsophisticated user. That category might include someone who is incapable of taking an all-purpose program and changing the code to fit a new purpose—a nonprogrammer, or a beginning programmer. Given a sufficiently sophisticated version of DB Starter, the user might be able to answer a series of prompts to inform the computer just what type of task had to be performed, and then receive a finished program that will do the job.

DB Starter can only do a few things. While keeping the size of the program down to what will comfortably fit in this book, I've left the door open for ambitious programmers to expand its capabilities, and to apply the concepts to their own work.

Using Figs. 7-2 and 7-3, let's look at how the program works. It consists of a series of modules, each designed to "create" a specific type of BASIC code. The mechanics are simple. The lines of the target program are assembled from the "library" of words and phrases built into DB Starter. As each line of the target program is completed, it is stored in a string array, LN\$(n). The particular element of LN\$(n) is determined by a counter, CU.

Each time a new target program line is initiated, control is sent

Fig. 7-2. Variables used in DB Starter.

```
我我我我我我我我我我我我我我我我我我我我我我我我我我我我
                                                              计记录设计 计计算法 计对码 化二苯基苯基 计对象 计对象 计多数 计
                                                                                                                                                                      A$=INKEY$:IF A$="" GOTO 120 RETURN
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    P$=S2$+"PRINT"+S1$+P1$+S5$
                                DataBase Starter
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                PRINT" *" , TAB (63) " * " ;
                                                                                                                                         DIM LN$(400), NU(20)
                                                                                                          DEFINT A-Y
ON ERROR GOTO 2680
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 FOR N8=1 TO 3
                                                                                                                                                                                                                     P1$=CHR$(34)
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                               NEXT N8
                                                                                           CLEAR 10000
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   GOSUB 340
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 GOSUB 210
                                                                                                                                                         GOTO 140
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 GOTO 250
                                                                                                                                                                                                     CU=1
                                                                                                                                                                                                     140
150
160
```

```
You may also type 'H' or 'HELP' to most input
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 290
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                               RUN"AUTOPROG/DOC" ELSE
                                                                           PRINT"*"; TAB(17); "-- Do you want instructions ?
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                          Automatic Programmer
                                                                                                                                                                                                                      IF A$="N" OR A$="n" THEN CLS: GOTO 510
IF A$="H" OR A$="h" THEN RUN"AUTOPROG/DOC"
IF A$="Y" OR A$="y" THEN RUN"AUTOPROG/DOC"
                                       *** Instructions? ***
                                                                                                                                                                prompts. *";
PRINT STRING$(64,"*");
                                                                                                   --";TAB(63);"*";
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                               *************
                                                                                                                     GOSUB 210
                                                                                                                                                                                                    GOSUB 120
                                                                                                                                        PRINT"*
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  350 PRINT"*
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         360 PRINT"*
240 RETURN
                                        245
                                                                               250
```

Fig. 7-3. Program listing for DB Starter.

```
David D. Busch
DB Starter
                                                                                                                                                      545 ' *** Enter file name of program ***
              By:
                                                                                              FOR N8=1 TO 100
                                                                                                                         PRINT:PRINT:PRINT
GOSUB 550
                                                                   FOR N=1 TO 20
                                                                                                     LN$ (N8)=""
                                                                          NU(N)=0
NEXT
                                                                                                            : NEXT N8
LN=10:IC=10
                                                            CU=1:NU=1
                                                                                                                                        GOTO 660
                           390 PRINT"*
370 PRINT"*
             380 PRINT"*
                                        RETURN
                                                     CLOSE
```

```
LINE INPUT"ENTER FILE NAME : ";F$

IF LEFT$(F$, 4)="HELP" OR F$="H" OR F$="h" GOSUB 2800
                                                              IF LEN(MID$(F$, S9))>4 GOTO 550
IF VAL(MID$(F$, S9+1, 1))>0 GOTO 550
IF LEN(F$)>12 GOTO 550
                                                                                                                                                                                                                         *** Increment line number ***
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                          725 ' *** Start writing program ***
                                                                                                                                                                                IF F$="" THEN F$="TEST"
                                                                                                                               IF LEN(F$)>8 GOTO 550
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                               LN$(CU)=STR$(LN)+"
RETURN
                                                                                                                                                IF F$="" GOTO 550
                                                 S9=0 GOTO 630
                                 S9=INSTR(F$,"/")
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  GOSUB 680
                                                                                                                                                                                                 GOTO 720
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   LN=LN+IC
                                                                                                                GOTO 660
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  CU=CU+1
                                                                                                                                                                 RETURN
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   680
                                                                                                                                                                                                                          675
                                                                590
600
                                                                                               610
620
630
640
```

Fig. 7-3. Program listing for DB Starter. (Continued from page 63.)

```
PRINT"Separate with commas. Input no more than two lines"
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             PRINT" of DATA, then hit ENTER and input another pair of
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            PRINT"Enter data elements to be written into program."
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                              PRINT "It is not necessary to enter the word DATA.
                                                                                                                       PRINT"Would you like to build some data lines?"
                                                                                                                                                                    OR A$="h" GOSUB 3280: GOTO 740
730 LN$(CU)=LN$(CU)+"CLEAR MEM/3*2"
                                                                                                                                                                                            OR A$="n" GOTO 1030 OR A$="Y" GOTO 850
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            LN$(CU)=LN$(CU)+"DATA"
                                                                           *** Data Lines ***
                            CLS:PRINT:PRINT
                                                                                                                                                                                                IF A$="N" (IF A$="Y" (
                                                                                                                                                                          IF A$="H"
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     GOSUB 680
                                                                                                                                                   GOSUB 120
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    GOTO 760
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             CU=CU+1
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        lines.
                                                                            745
```

Enter

PRINT"this form: 35,20,Address,Phone,Zip "PRINT" Enter ";CHR\$(34);"/";CHR\$(34);" to finish."

```
1040 PRINT"Will this program store disk I/O data in a string
910 LINE INPUT D3$
920 IF D3$="/" CFLAG=0: GOTO 1030
930 IF RIGHT$(D3$, 1)="/" THEN D3$=LEFT$(D3$, LEN(D3$)-1):
                                                                                                                940 IF RIGHT$(D3$, 1)="," THEN D3$=LEFT$(D3$, LEN(D3$)-1)
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  1050 GOSUB 120
1060 IF A$="H" OR A$="h" GOSUB 2920: GOTO 1030
1070 IF A$="N" OR A$="n" THEN 1320
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        1025 * *** Build arrays ***
                                                                                                                                            950 FOR N7=1 TO LEN(D3$)
960 Y$=MID$(D3$, N7, 1)
970 IF Y$="," THEN D4=D4+1
980 NEXT N7
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      1000 GOSUB 810
1010 LN$(CU)=LN$(CU)+D3$
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 1020 IF CFLAG=0 GOTO 900
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                               1030 CLS:PRINT:PRINT
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            990 D4=D4+1
                                                                                      CFLAG=1
```

67

Fig. 7-3. Program listing for DB Starter. (Continued from page 65.)

```
INPUT"How many elements in the first dimension (ROW)";ROW$ IF LEFT$(ROW$, 1)="h" OR LEFT$(ROW$, 1)="H" GOSUB 3030:
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   IF LEFT$ (COL$, 1)="h" OR LEFT$ (COL$, 1)="H" GOSUB 3030:
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  IF LEFT$ (ROW$, 1)="H" OR LEFT$ (ROW$, 1)="h" GOSUB 3030:
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                           INPUT"Enter elements in second dimension (COL) :"; COL$
                                                   PRINT"Will the array have one or two dimensions?"
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            IF DI=1 THEN LN$(CU)=LN$(CU)+")"; GOTO 1320
                                                                        GOSUB 120
IF A$="H" OR A$="h" GOSUB 2920: GOTO 1100
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        INPUT"How large should the array be";ROW$
IF A$="Y" OR A$="Y" THEN 1090 ELSE 1050
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                LN$(CU)=LN$(CU)+"DIM DA$(" +STR$(ROW)
                                                                                                                                DI=VAL(A$)
IF DI<1 OR DI>2 THEN 1110
                                                                                                                                                                                   IF DI=1 GOTO 1230
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         ROW=VAL (ROW$)
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                           ROW=VAL (ROW$)
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      COL=VAL(COL$)
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                              GOTO 1260
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 1180
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       1170
GOTO
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 GOTO
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         1200
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       1190
                                                                                                                                                                                                               1160
```

```
1330 IF D4>0 THEN CU=CU+1: GOSUB 680: LN$(CU)=LN$(CU)+"FOR G=1
                                                                      IF D4>0 THEN LN$(CU-1)=LN$(CU-1)+",DTA$(" +STR$(D4)+")";
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     PRINT A$: GOTO 1390 ELSE 1350
                                                                                              1330
IF D4>0 THEN GOSUB 680: LN$(CU)=LN$(CU)+"DIM DTA$("
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     ******
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        PRINT"Will this program need a menu?"
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   LN$(CU)=LN$(CU)+"CLS:PRINT:" +P$+"
LN$(CU)=LN$(CU)+"," +STR$(COL)+")
                                              LN$(CU)=LN$(CU)+"NC="+STR$(COL)
                                                                                                                                                                                            +STR$(D4)+":READ DTA$(G):NEXT G
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       GOTO 2870
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                              1900
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                              THEN
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     THEN
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                          1335 ' *** Build Menus ***
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     IF A$="H" OR A$="h"
IF A$="N" OR A$="n"
IF A$="Y" OR A$="y"
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                           ********** +P1$+":PRINT"
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         CLS:PRINT:PRINT
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            GOSUB 680
                        GOSUB 680
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                              GOSUB 120
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   1410 IM(1)=LN
                                                                                                                                             +STR$(D4)+")"
                                                                                               GOTO
```

Fig. 7-3. Program listing for DB Starter. (Continued from page 67.)

```
IF LEFT$(CH$, 1)="H" OR LEFT$(CH$, 1)="h" GOSUB 3030: GOTO
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   IF MENU$(N)="HELP" OR MENU$(N)="H" OR MENU$(N)="h"
                                                                                                                             1490 PRINT"Will the choices include 'Save file to disk' and
                                                                                                                                                                                                    GOTO 1550
                                                                                                                                                                                                     THEN IOFLAG=2: PRINT A$:
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 PRINT"Enter label for menu choice #";N
                                                                                                                                                                                  GOSUB 3190: GOTO 1490
                                                                                                                                                                                                                     PRINT A$: GOTO 1550
INPUT"How many choices on the menu"; CH$
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            IF CH=IOFLAG THEN N=1; GOTO 1670
                                                                                                           IF MI=2 THEN CH=MI: GOTO 1580
                                                                                                                                               "Load file from disk" ? ";
                                                                                                                                                                                 OR A = ^{u}h^{u} (OR A = ^{u}y^{u} OR A = ^{u}y^{u} I
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    INPUT MENUS(N)
                                                                                         1550
                                                                      IF MI<2 GOTO 1420
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        GOSUB 3160: GOTO 1590
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                FOR N=1 TO CH
                                                                                          IF DI=0 THEN
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                CH=CH-IOFLAG
                                                      MI=VAL(CH$)
                                                                                                                                                                                                   IF A$="Y"
                                                                                                                                                                                                                     IF A$="n"
                                                                                                                                                                                  IF A$="H"
                                                                                                                                                                 1500 GOSUB 120
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        GOTO 1500
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                          CH=MI
                                                                                                           1480
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                1590
1600
                                                                                                                                                                                 1510
1520
1530
1540
1550
1560
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                               1580
```

```
LN$(CU)=LN$(CU)+"INPUT" +P1$+"ENTER CHOICE : " +P1$+";CH$"
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 1790 LN$(CU)=LN$(CU)+"CH=VAL(CH$): IF CH<1 OR CH> " +STR$(MI)+"
                                                                                              IOFLAG=2 THEN GOSUB 680: LN$(CU)=LN$(CU)+P$+STR$(N)+".)
                                                                                                                                               FILE TO DISK" +P1$
                                               " +MENU$(NW)+P1$
                                                                                                                                               LN$(CU)=LN$(CU)+P$+STR$(N+1)+". " +"SAVE
                                              LN$(CU)=LN$(CU)+P$+STR$(NW)+".)
                                                                                                                      +"LOAD FILE FROM DISK" +P1$: GOSUB 680:
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         IN$(CU)=IN$(CU)+"ON CH GOSUB" +NU$
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 NU$=LEFT$(NU$,(LEN(NU$)-1))
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 NU$=NU$+STR$(NU)+","
                                                                                                                                                                                               LN$(CU)=LN$(CU)+"PRINT"
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      GOTO" +STR$(VAL(LN$(CU-1)))
FOR NW=1 TO CH
                                                                                                                                                                                                                         FOR NW=1 TO MI
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                               NU=NU+IC*50
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       NU(NW)=NU
                       GOSUB 680
                                                                      NEXT NW
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         NEXT NW
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         GOSUB 680
                                                                                                                                                                       GOSUB 680
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         GOSUB 680
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 GOSUB 680
                                                                                                                                                                                               1690
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 0087
```

Fig. 7-3. Program listing for DB Starter. (Continued from page 69.)

```
REM ***** LOAD FILE FROM DISK
                                                                                                                                                                                                                      REM **** LOAD FILE
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                              1960 LN$(CU)=LN$(CU)+"INPUT " +P1$+"ENTER FILE NAME
                                                                                                INSERT
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                          LN$(CU)=LN$(CU)+" OPEN " +P1$+"I" +P1$+",1,F$"
                                                                                               REM 本本本本本本
                LN$(CU)=LN$(CU)+"GOTO" +STR$(IM(1))
                                                                                                                   +MENU$(N)+" SUBROUTINE HERE " +" *****"
                                                                                                                                         1880 : NEXT N

1890 IF IOFLAG<>2 THEN 2380

1900 GOSUB 680

1910 IF DI=0 AND MI=0 GOTO 2380

1920 IF MI=0 THEN LN$(CU)=LN$(CU)+"

DISK"; GOTO 1950
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  LN$(CU)=LN$(CU)+" INPUT #1,NF"
                                                                                                LN$(CU)=STR$(NU(N))+"
                                     FOR N=1 TO MI-IOFLAG
GOSUB 680
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                1930 LN=NU(N)
1940 LN$(CU)=STR$(NU(N))+"
                                                                              IN=NU(N)
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                GOSUB 680
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                              1950 GOSUB 680
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                           1970 GOSUB 680
GOSUB 680
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   +PI$+";F$"
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         水水水水水石
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    1990
                                                                              1860
1870
```

```
680
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     REM ***** SAVE FILE TO
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  FILE TO DISK
                                                          IF DI=2 THEN LN$(CU)=LN$(CU)+"FOR COL=1 TO NC": GOSUB
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    *****"
2180 GOSUB 680
2190 LN$(CU)=LN$(CU)+"INPUT " +P1$+"ENTER FILE NAME
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 REM **** SAVE
                                                                                             2060 IF DI=2 THEN LN$(CU)=LN$(CU)+",COL)" ELSE LN$(CU)=LN$(CU)+")"
                                                                                                                                                         LN$(CU)=LN$(CU)+"NEXT"

IF DI=2 THEN LN$(CU)=LN$(CU)+" COL,N"

GOSUB 680
                                                                          2050 LN$(CU)=LN$(CU)+"INPUT #1,DA$(N"
2060 IF DI=2 THEN LN$(CU)=LN$(CU)+",C
                   LN$(CU)=LN$(CU)+"FOR N=1 TO NF"
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     IF MI=0 THEN LN$(CU)=LN$(CU)+"
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             LN$ (CU)=LN$ (CU)+"RETURN"
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     DISK ******* GOTO 2180
2160 LN=NU(N+1)
2170 LN$(CU)=STR$(NU(N+1))+"
                                                                                                                                                                                                                       LN$(CU)=LN$(CU)+"CLOSE"
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            GOSUB 680
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   GOSUB 680
                                         GOSUB 680
                                                                                                                                       2070 GOSUB 680
2080 LN$(CU)=L
2010 GOSUB 680
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        +P1$+" ;F$"
                                                                                                                                                                                                 2110
2110
2120
2130
2140
2150
                                                                                                                                                                               2090
```

Fig. 7-3. Program listing for DB Starter. (Continued from page 71.)

```
IF DI=2 THEN LN$(CU)=LN$(CU)+"FOR COL=1 TO NC": GOSUB 680
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   2380 PRINT"Do you want a 'CLEAR SCREEN' subroutine?
               LN$(CU)=LN$(CU)+" OPEN " +PI$+"O" +PI$+",1,F$"
                                                                                                                                                                                     IF DI=2 THEN LN$(CU)=LN$(CU)+",COL)" ELSE
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                               IF DI=2 THEN LN$(CU)=LN$(CU)+" COL,N"
                                                                                                                                                                                                                             LN$(CU)=LN$(CU)+";" +P1$+"," +P1$
                                                                                                                                                                LN$(CU)=LN$(CU)+"PRINT #1,DA$(N"
                                                                                                  LN$(CU)=LN$(CU)+"FOR N=1 TO NF"
                                                          LN$(CU)=LN$(CU)+" PRINT #1,NF"
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   LN$ (CU) = LN$ (CU) + "RETURN"
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         LN$(CU)=LN$(CU)+"CLOSE"
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             * *** Subroutines ? ***
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                          LN$(CU)=LN$(CU)+"NEXT"
                                                                                                                                                                                                           LN$(CU)=LN$(CU)+")
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         GOSUB 680
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         GOSUB 680
                                                                                    GOSUB 680
                                                                                                                             GOSUB 680
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                              GOSUB 680
GOSUB 680
                                          GOSUB 680
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    2300
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                2375
                                                                                                                                                                                          2290
```

```
REM **** CLEAR SCREEN SUBROUTINE
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            REM ***** INKEY$ INPUT SUBROUTINE
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       2570 LN$(CU)=LN$(CU)+"A$=INKEY$:IF A$=" +P1$+P1$+" GOTO "
                                                                                                                                                      subroutine?
                GOSUB 3250: GOTO 2380
                                                                                                                                                                                   GOSUB 3250: GOTO 2480
                                                                                                                                     LN$(CU)=LN$(CU)+"CLS:PRINT:PRINT:RETURN"
                           PRINT AS: GOTO 2440
PRINT AS: GOTO 2480
                                                                                                                                                                                               PRINT AS: GOTO 2620
PRINT AS: GOTO 2540
                                                                                                                                                   PRINT"Do you want an 'INKEY$-INPUT'
GOSUB 120
                                                                                                                                                                                OR A$="h" (
OR A$="n" ]
OR A$="y" ]
             OR A$="h" (
OR A$="y"
OR A$="n"
                                                                                                                                                                                                                           2530 GOTO 2490
2540 GOSUB 680
2550 LN$(CU)=LN$(CU)+"
                                                                                        2450 LN$(CU)=LN$(CU)+"
*****"
                                                                                                                                                                                IF A$="H"
IF A$="N"
                                           IF A$="N"
               IF A$="H"
                            IF A$="Y"
                                                           GOTO 2390
                                                                                                                                                                                                            IF A$="Y"
                                                                          GOSUB 680
GOSUB 120
                                                                                                                       GOSUB 680
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         2560 GOSUB 680
                                                         2430
2440
                                                                                                                       2460
                                                                                                                                    2470
                                                                                                                                                                  2490
2500
2510
2520
                                                                                                                                                   2480
```

Fig. 7-3. Program listing for DB Starter. (Continued from page 73.)

```
UNKNOWN ERROR
                                                      " *** Write program to disk
          LN$(CU)=LN$(CU)+"A=VAL(A$)"
                                                                                                                                                                                                   PRINT TAB(25)"IN LINE "; ERL
                                LN$(CU)=LN$(CU)+"RETURN"
                                                                                                                                                        1 *** Error Trap ***
                                                                                                 PRINT#1, LN$(N1)
                                                                                                                                                                                        PRINT TAB(20) "****
                                                                           OPEN"O", 1, F$

FOR NI=1 TO CU
                                                                                                                                                                                                              FOR N9=1 TO 500
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                               CLS:PRINT:PRINT
                                                                                                                                                                              PRINT: PRINT
                                                                                                            NEXT NI
                    GOSUB 680
GOSUB 680
                                                                                                                                                                                                                         NEXT N9
                                                                                                                       CLOSE
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   STOP
                                                                                                                                   RUN
          2590
2600
2610
                                                                                     2630
2640
2650
2660
                                                                                                                                                                                                   2700
2710
2720
2730
2740
                                                      2615
                                                                           2620
                                                                                                                                 2670
                                                                                                                                                        2675
                                                                                                                                                                              2680
2690
```

```
PRINT"module that asks for number of choices, labels, etc."
                                                                                                     PRINT"be a legal Disk basic name, or your input will be"
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 đ
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       PRINT"Many forms of data are conveniently stored in
                                                                                                                                                                                                             PRINT"Menus may be designed using a special"
             PRINT TAB(15)"Hit any key to resume program"
                                                                                                                                                                  LINE INPUT"ENTER FILENAME :"; F$
                                                                 *** Help Routines ***
                                                                                        GOSUB 2740
                                                                                                                                                                                                 GOSUB 2740
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                          GOSUB 2740
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             GOTO 1340
GOTO 2760
                            GOSUB 120
                                            RETURN
                                                                                                                                                                                  RETURN
PRINT
                                                                                                                                                  PRINT
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        string"
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        2920
2760
                                                                 2795
                                                                                       2800
2810
                                                                                                                                                                                                                             2890
                                                                                                                                                                   2850
                                                                                                                                                                                2860
                                                                                                                                                                                                              2880
                                            2790
```

RETURN

Fig. 7-3. Program listing for DB Starter. (Continued from page 75.)

```
2940 PRINT"array which looks like this: DA$(row,col).
                              checkbook"
```

2950 PRINT"represents data that can be stored in a

2960 PRINT"array. Each check number represents a row, while two-dimensional"

payee" 2970 PRINT"amount, balance, etc. represent columns. arrays"

2980 PRINT"can be conveniently stored and loaded to and from disk."

array for information which 2990 PRINT"Use a one-dimensional has only"

If rows and columns are 3000 PRINT"one 'field' per record. involved"

3010 PRINT"use a two dimensional array."

GOSUB 2740 GOTO 2760

PRINT"Enter how large each dimension of the array should

3050 PRINT"For example, might want an array: DA\$(30,30)." PRINT"Do not make much larger than you need to save memory."

3070 GOTO 2760

3130 PRINT"then write your own input routine, or use the INKEY\$" 3140 PRINT"subroutine provided." 3150 GOTO 2760 3160 GOSUB 2740 PRINT"Most programs with multiple functions need a menu so Automatic Programmer will design a PRINT"for you, and reduce number of menu choices you have" PRINT"If you have specified a string array, and need disk PRINT"Enter the label or prompt for this menu choice :" Program will write these 3110 PRINT"for you and write appropriate input and error trapping" 3120 PRINT"routines. Or, you may design your own menu. 3210 PRINT"You should enter Yes. 3100 PRINT"user may choose. **GOSUB 2740** GOSUB 2740 GOTO 2760 routines" must"

Fig. 7-3. Program listing for DB Starter. (Continued from page 77.)

GOSUB 2740
PRINT"You may build data lines automatically, along with" Menu labels will be created for 3260 PRINT"Enter Yes if you want this subroutine in your PRINT"a routine to read them into a string array. PRINT"enter the data information when asked" 3230 PRINT"to input by two. program" 3270 GOTO 2760 3280 GOSUB 2740 3290 PRINT"YOU I 3240 GOTO 2760 3250 GOSUB 2740 GOTO 2760

Fig. 7-3. Program listing for DB Starter. (Continued from page 79.)

to a subroutine at line 680. There, the line number of the target (LN) is incremented by IC (LN=LN+IC) where IC is specified by the user. Next, CU is increased by one so that the new program line will be stored in the next available element of LN\$(n). Finally, the new line number (LN) is converted into a string, and assigned as the first part of LN\$(CU), along with a pair of spaces.

For example, if LN=100 and IC=10 when control is sent to Line 680 of DB Starter, LN\$(CU) will equal "110" when it RETURNS. Each element of LN\$(n) will begin with a line number, usually larger by IC from the previous element. The exception is when LN has been given a different value somewhere else in the program.

The initial line of the program will CLEAR two thirds of memory. Next, DB Starter asks the user whether or not a string array will be used to store data. If so, the number of dimensions are input into variable DI. If DI=2, then the user is asked to provide the desired size for each of the two dimensions (ROW and COL). If DI=1, then only ROW is used. The target program line is created by combining the line number (already stored in LN\$(n)) with DIM and the array dimensions enclosed in parentheses. If a two-dimensional array has been specified, an additional line is developed that defines variable NC (number of columns) equal to COL. NC is used later in the target program to control disk input and output.

If menu is needed, DB Starter obligingly creates a line that labels one. Note that to make a PRINT statement it is necessary to combine PRINT with quotes around the material to be printed. Quotation marks (CHR\$(34)) are stored in P1\$, and this string variable used whenever quotation marks are desired in the target program.

The user is asked to input the number of choices required for the menu. If DI=0 (that is, no string array was dimensioned), the program assumes that disk file I/O will not be required, and does not offer the choice of taking advantage of the built-in disk I/O subroutines. Of course, disk files consisting of nothing but numeric values are possible, but the greater flexibility of storing both string and numeric data as strings (and then converting to numbers with VAL, as needed) makes it simpler for DB Starter to assume that disk files will be loaded into and out of a string array only.

If a string array has been specified, then the user is asked if "save file to disk" and "load file from disk" will be included in the menu. If so, IOFLAG is set to 2. The user has told the program how many choices will be included on the menu. This value is trans-

ferred to CH, which is used as a parameter in a FOR-NEXT loop that allows input of the names of the menu choices.

If the built-in disk I/O routines are desired, two is subtracted from CH so that the user does not have to bother to input these. That is, if five menu choices will be used, but two of them will be for disk I/O, the programmer has to enter only the other three. Then, the menu display lines are created for all but the disk routines.

Now things begin to get a little tricky. For each menu choice the program has to create a subroutine location to which the target program can branch, and space has to be allocated for them. So, rather than using LN and incrementing it by IC, another variable, NU, is used instead. NU is incremented by IC\*50 for each of the menu subroutines. For example, if IC=10, then each of the subroutines will be spaced 500 lines apart from each other. The starting line number for each menu subroutine is stored in an array NU(n).

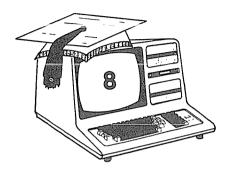
Next, a string representation of the starting line number for each menu subroutine is needed (for an ON CH GOSUB 500, 1000, 1500, etc., statement). These are assembled with a comma tacked on the end. Next, an INPUT "ENTER CHOICE:"; CH\$ line is created for the target program and an error trap is also built. When the target program is run, if VAL(CH\$) is less than one or is greater than MI (the number of menu choices available), the input is refused.

All these subroutines targeted in the ON CH GOSUB line will eventually RETURN, so control is sent back to the beginning of the menu. Its starting line number had been stored earlier in IM(1) and is used in line 670 to build a control-branching instruction. To aid the programmer in finishing the skeletal program, a REM is inserted at each of the menu subroutine starting line numbers. Remember that it's not a good idea to send control to a REM line (these might be deleted later), so don't simply begin writing the code at the next available line number following the remark.

The next portion builds a simple disk input module, which will ask the user a filename, open that sequential file, input from the file the number of items in the file, and then begin a FOR-NEXT loop from 1 to the number of items in the file. Within the loop, INPUT #1 loads the data. If the relevant array is two-dimensional, a nested FOR-NEXT loop from 1 to the number of columns (NC, defined early in the program) is used. Actual construction of the disk input module is fairly clear cut. Its mirror-image twin is the Create Disk Output routine, which performs its own function in nearly identical fashion.

Other frequently needed modules can be added to DB Starter's "library" as required. I used "clear screen" and INKEY\$ routines as examples; you are free to add your own favorite subroutines as you desire. The final portion of the program saves the finished target program to disk under any desired legal name. A noncompressed (ASCII) file is created which may be loaded, finished, debugged, and used as desired.

DB Starter is simple enough to form the basis for a much more complex code-generating system. A big drawback is the need to anticipate exactly what capabilities will be needed in the finished program. If a subroutine isn't in the program generating system's library, or if the parameters are beyond its capabilities (i.e., a three-dimensional array is required), the necessary code will have to be built up from scratch. It is still beyond the capability of microcomputers to use logic to create. Our silent servants must wait for instructions from us before doing anything at all, no matter how simple.



## Program Proofer

In the two previous "Automatic Programmer" examples, we've shown you how to let your computer write its own screens and assemble program skeletons. Now here's "Program Proofer," which allows a TRS-80 to partially debug its own programs by checking the spelling of keywords and some syntax errors.

Some program errors caused by misspelled words lurk deep within seldom-called code. Obvious bugs will ordinarily surface during program development, because the interpreter will note a syntax error when the line is run. Other errors, however, will not be detected for some time, because the specific conditions that invoke that program line are rare. In the worst possible situations, these mistakes are hidden in error traps designed to help the unsophisticated user, or they may cause the loss of valuable data. Program Proofer will check every line of a program, and detect all bad keywords. It will catch only typos, however; if you used LPRINT when you meant PRINT, the bug will slip by unchecked.

Program Proofer was inspired by the plethora of spelling checker programs which have become available in the past few years. These useful software tools take any text document and compare each word to an internal dictionary. Any word in your text which does not appear in the dictionary is flagged as a possible spelling error. This program works on exactly the same principal, but with a much smaller dictionary of 112 keywords, most of which

are those used in Radio Shack's Level II, Model III, or Model 4 BASIC interpreters.

Program Proofer examines every word in a target program, ignoring words inside quotes—prompts, for example—numbers, and arithmetic operators. The only letter combinations left are keywords, variables, and misspelled words. Although it would be possible to tell which of the remaining words are variables, leaving only the incorrect keywords, I decided not to implement this feature. As written, Program Proofer has the added capability of providing a variable cross-reference listing that includes line numbers.

Not throwing out variables also means that the operator has the opportunity to look for variables which may have been spelled incorrectly as well. This is important both to Model I/III users, as well as Model 4 users, but for different reasons. Under Level II or Model III BASIC, PREVIOUS and PEVIOUS would appear as two different variables, although PREVIOUS and PREVIUS would not. With the earlier Microsoft BASIC, only the first two letters of the variable name are significant, so finding such misspellings is important. With the Model 4, however, longer variable names are allowed, so finding errors is even more important. PREVIOUS and PREVIUS would, in fact, be different variables and cause an error if the difference were unintentional.

The target program should not be one which has been tightly packed with all spaces removed. These spaces are required with Model 4's BASIC, but optional under Level II or Model III BASIC. Multiple statements per line are okay. However, keywords should have spaces separating them, and there should be a space after the line number and before the first word in the line. Other spaces may be omitted. If you wish to proof a program which has been tightly packed, use a utility such as PACKER, from Cottage Software. This is an indispensable programmer's tool that is especially helpful for deciphering someone else's coding logic.

When asked for the target program name, enter the file specification of the previously saved ASCII format program. Each line will be examined separately, and all words not included within quotation marks compared with the internal dictionary. If a match is not found, the questionable word (which may also be a variable) is stored away for later reference. The number of parentheses are counted, and any missing ones noted. Program Proofer will also locate absent quotation marks, and list all the variables used in the program. For those who are using NEWDOS/80 2.0, the bad words and variables are

presented in sorted, alphabetical order. In all cases, line numbers are provided to make tracking down the errant bugs easier.

Here, briefly, is how Program Proofer works. (Refer to Figs. 8-1 and 8-2.) The 112 keywords are stored in a string array, WRD\$(26,16). Each of 26 rows in the array correspond to one of the 26 letters of the alphabet. The 16 columns allow for up to 16 keywords beginning with that letter. For example, ABS is stored in WRD\$(1,1), while AND is placed in WRD\$(1,2).

This is accomplished in a FOR-NEXT loop beginning at line 760. The keyword is read from a data line, and the first letter examined to determine its ASCII value. Then 64 is subtracted from that value to obtain the alphabetic position, and thus the corresponding ROW of WRD\$(row,col). The keyword CDBL, which begins with C (ASCII 67), is directed to Row 3 (67 minus 64). The column is determined by a counter, A, which is incremented every time a new keyword is READ, and reset to one each time a new ROW is opened (A2 <> PREVIOUS).

| A\$ BAD\$(n) D\$ D2 DOSFLAG F\$ | Line of text being proofed. Array storing bad words and variables. Temporarily stores good keyword names. ASC value of first character in keyword. Set to 1 if NEWDOS/80 used. Filename of program being proofed. Length of the program segment being proofed. |
|---------------------------------|--|
| LP                              | Number of left parentheses.  |
| M\$                             | Middle string of SEG\$   |
| N                               | Loop counter.  |
| N1-N9                           | Loop counters.   |
| NI, NU                          | Counters   |
| P                               | Position of space in program line being checked.   |
| PAR\$(n)                        | Lines with odd number of parentheses.  |
| PFLAG                           | Send output to printer.  |
| RP                              | Number of right parentheses.   |
| SEG\$                           | Program segment being proofed.   |
| TEST\$                          | Program segment being tested.  |
| WRD\$(n,n1)                     | Array storing good keywords.   |
| Z3                              | Number of lines printed.   |
| ZU                              | Number of lines printed.   |

Fig. 8-1. Variables used in Program Proofer.

As disk operating systems gain new features in their BASICs, Program Proofer may be updated to include these new keywords and commands. Add the word to the proper position in the DATA lines and change the 112 to the new number of keywords. If a given letter of the alphabet now has more than 16 keywords, it will be necessary to reDIMension WRD\$(row,col) as well.

The target program (F\$) is OPENed, and LINEINPUT into variable A\$, a line at a time. The first space in the program line is assumed to follow the line number, and the rest of the line is stored in SEG\$. A FOR-NEXT loop from 1 to L+1 (length of SEG\$) examines each character in the program line in turn.

When certain delimiters are reached, the program assumes that the end of a word or variable has been located. These delimiters include a space, quotation mark, comma, semicolon, parentheses, colon, and arithmetic signs such as plus, minus, equals, more than, or less than. At this point, control drops to a subroutine, where that portion of the line, TEST\$, is subjected to a series of tests.

If TEST\$="" (null), or if the value of the first character is greater than zero (signifying a number), then the program jumps back and begins looking at the next section of the program line. Obviously, no variable or keyword can begin with a number. When "REM" or its abbreviation" "is encountered, the program knows that the rest of the program line should be ignored.

Once TEST\$ passes these checks, it enters a FOR-NEXT loop from 1 to 16, which compares TEST\$ with all the elements of WRD\$(row,col) beginning with the same letter of the alphabet as TEST\$. If a match is found, FLAG is set to 1 and control drops to 1230, where counter NU is incremented and the suspect word stored in string array BAD\$(n), along with the line number where it appears. The word itself is positioned first, followed by the line number, so that the array may later be sorted into alphabetical order. Finally, TEST\$ is nulled and the rest of the line examined for additional statements, variables, and keywords.

Any time a quotation mark is encountered, SFLAG is set to 1, and additional characters in the line are ignored until the second ("close quote") is located. Then the following words are considered and checked normally. Though no specific check for missing quotation marks is built in, they will stand out like a sore thumb because, in the final listing, words inside of prompts will be listed as bad words.

A check is included for absent parentheses, however. Each right parenthesis encountered in a program line increments variable

```
ON ERROR GOTO 1720
) DIM WRD$(26, 16), PAR$(30), BAD$(200)
安全中央中央中央中央中央中央中央中央中央中央中央中央中央中央中
                                                     A$=INKEY$:IF A$="" GOTO 120
                          Program Proofer
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                              PRINT" * " ; TAB (63) " * " ;
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   *** Instructions ***
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 FOR N8=1 TO 3
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                           NEXT N8
                                                                               CLEAR 10000
                                                                                             DEFINT A-Y
                                                                                                                                                                                                      GOSUB 180
                                                                                                                                                                                          GOSUB 310
                                                                                                                                                                                                                   GOTO 220
                                                                                                                                    GOTO 140
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         RETURN
                                                                                                                                                               RETURN
                                                                                                                                                                            CLS
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   215
                                                                                                                                    \frac{110}{120}
                                                                                                                                                                           140
150
160
```

```
You may also type 'H' or 'HELP' to most input
                                                                                                                                                RUN"AUTOPROG/DOC" ELSE 260
PRINT"*";TAB(17);"-- Do you want instructions ? --";TAB(63);"*";
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                Automatic Programmer
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                               David D. Busch
                                                                                             GOSUB 120
IF A$="N" OR A$="n" THEN CLS: GOTO 400
IF A$="H" OR A$="h" THEN RUN"AUTOPROG/DOC"
IF A$="Y" OR A$="Y" THEN RUN"AUTOPROG/DOC"
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                PROGRAM PROOFER
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 By:
                                                                  prompts. *";
PRINT STRING$(64,"*");
                                                                                                                                                                                                             *******
                                GOSUB 180
                                                 PRINT"*
                                                                                                                                                                                                                              320 PRINT"*
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             340 PRINT"*
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                              330 PRINT"*
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             350 PRINT"*
                                                                                               260
270
280
280
300
310
220
```

Fig. 8-2. Listing for Program Proofer.

```
IF LEFT$(F$, 4)="HELP" OR F$="H" OR F$="h" GOSUB 1920
                                                                                                    " *** Input filename to be proofed ***
                                                                                                                                                                      IF LEN(MID$(F$, S9))>4 GOTO 430
IF VAL(MID$(F$, S9+1, 1))>0 GOTO 430
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     THEN F$="TEST"
                                                                                                                                                                                            IF LEN(F$)>12 GOTO 430
GOTO 540
                                                                                                                                                                                                                   IF LEN(F$)>8 GOTO 430
                                                                                                                                                                                                                               F$="" GOTO 430
                                                        PRINT: PRINT: PRINT
                                                                                                                                                           S9=0 GOTO 510
                                                                   GOSUB 430
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     子公二二十二
                                                                              GOTO 540
360 PRINT"*
                        RETURN
                                             CLOSE
                                   CLS
                                  380
390
400
                                                                                                                                      4440
4450
4470
480
90
                                                                                                     425
                                                                                                                                                                                                        500
510
520
```

```
DATA NEW, NEXT, NOT, ON, OR, OPEN, OUT, PEEK, PRINT, POINT,
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        DATA IF, INP, INPUT, INKEY$, INSTR, INT, KILL, LET, LPRINT,
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   PRINT TAB(10)"BEEN SAVED IN NON-COMPRESSED (ASCII) FORMAT"
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                PRINT TAB(10)"THIS MODULE WORKS ONLY ON FILES WHICH HAVE"
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    DATA SAVE, SET, SGN, SIN, SQR, STEP, STOP, STR$, STRING$
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       DATA TAB, TAN, THEN, TIME$, TO, TROFF, TRON, USING, USR,
                                                                    DATA CDBL, CHR$, CINT, CHAIN, CLEAR, CLOSE, CLOCK, CLS,
                                                                                                        COS, COPY, CSNG, CVD, CVI, CVS, DEFFN, DATA, DATE,
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                          DATA RANDOM, RIGHT$, READ, REM, RESET, RESTORE, RESUME,
                                                                                                                                                                               DATA ELSE, END, EOF, ERL, ERR, ERROR, EXP, FIELD, FOR,
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                           DATA LOG, MEM, MID$, MEM, MERGE, MKD$, MKI$, MKS$
                                                                                                                                                                                                              FORMAT, FN, FRES, FREE, FIX, GOTO, GOSUB, GET
                                                                                                                                              DEFDBL, DEFINT, DEFSNG, DEFSTR, DIM
                                   DATA ABS, AND, ASC, ATN, BASIC, BOOT
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                          LINEINPUT, LSET, LOAD, LEN, LEFT$
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       PRINT TAB(10) " Use this syntax:
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                RETURN, RND, RUN
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                CLS:PRINT:PRINT
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         POKE, POS, PUT
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             VAL, VARPTR
RESTORE
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        590
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    630
                                                                                                                                                                               580
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            620
```

Fig. 8-2. Listing for Program Proofer. (Continued from page 89.)

SAVE ";CHR\$(34);"filename";CHR\$(34)",A"

```
lessa
                                                                                      PRINT"on program line. If you see garbage loading, you
                PRINT "May not work on 'packed' files, or those with
                                                                                                                                PRINT"forgotten to save your file in ASCII format."
                                         PRINT"than one space between line number and first
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      IF A$="H" OR A$="h" GOSUB 2000: CLS: GOTO 830
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                          PRINT @ 718," Are you running Newdos 80 2.0 ?
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     <u>|</u>
                                                                                                                                                                            PRINT @ 718," -- A few seconds please
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  IF D2<>PREVIOUS THEN PREVIOUS=D2:
                                                                                                                                                                                                                *** Read GOOD names into array ***
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             THEN DOSFLAG=1
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                          D2=ASC(LEFT$(D$, 1))-64
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                           IF A$="N" OR A$="n"
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        WRD$ (D2_n D) = D$
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 FOR N=1 TO 112
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       READ D$
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     PRINT: PRINT
                                                                statement"
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                              0=0+1
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                               GOSUB 120
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       NEXT N
                                                                                                         have"
                                                                                                                                                         PRINT
PRINT
                                                                                      720
                                                                                                                                                                                                                755
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                840
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  760
```

```
Reading in Program Lines
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     1005 ' *** Check for keyword delimiter ***
                                                         905 ' *** Open Program, Read in Lines ***
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                              IF SFLAG<>1 THEN 1050
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                M$=MID$(SEG$, N1, 1)
                                                                                                                                                                                            P=INSTR(A$, CHR$(32))
                                                                                    OPEN"I",1, F$
IF EOF(1)THEN 1330
LINE INPUT#1, A$
                                                                                                                                                                                                         SEG$=MID$(A$, P+1)
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  FOR N1=1 TO L
CLS:PRINT:PRINT
              PRINT TAB(14)"
                                                                                                                                                                                                                        1000 L=LEN(SEG$)+1
                                                                                                                                TEST$=""
                                                                                                                                                PRINT A$
                                                                                                                                                                              SFLAG=0
                           PRINT
                                                                                                                                                               FL=0
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                1020:
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                               1030
880
890
900
                                                                                                                                                950
960
```

Fig. 8-2. Listing for Program Proofer. (Continued from page 91.)

```
OR
OR
                                         " OR MS=" ""
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            IF TEST$=WRD$(A, N2)THEN FLAG=1: N2=16: GOTO
                      IF M\$=^n)^n OR M\$=^n+^n OR M\$=^n-^n OR M\$=CHR\$(32)OR
                                                                                                                                                                         M$=CHR$(34)THEN SFLAG=1:IF MID$(SEG$, NI-1,
                                                                M$="<"OR M$=">" OR M$="#" OR M$="\" OR M$="*"
                                                                                                                                                   SFLAG=1 THEN SFLAG=0; TEST$=""; GOTO 1250
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      IF WRD$(A, N2)="" THEN N2=16: GOTO 1230
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             VAL(TEST$)>0 THEN TEST$="" GOTO 1250
                                           M$="="OR M$="(" OR M$=CHR$(34)OR M$=",
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       TEST$="REM" OR TEST$="" THEN 1260
M$=CHR$(34)THEN 1080 ELSE 1250
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  A=ASC(LEFT$(TEST$, 1))
IF A<65 THEN TEST$=""; GOTO 1250
                                                                                    M$=CHR$(10)OR M$="" THEN 1080
                                                                                                                                                                                             1)=CHR$(32)THEN TEST$=""
                                                                                                                                                                                                                    M$="(" THEN LP=LP+1
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         THEN RP=RP+1
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   TEST$="" THEN 1250
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 FOR N2=1 TO 16
                                                                                                            TEST$=TEST$+M$
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        M$="")"
                                                                                                                                 GOTO 1250
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  NEXT
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                              A=A-64
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                FL=0
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  1130
   1040
                        1050
                                                                                                                                                      1080
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  1160
                                                                                                                                                                         1090
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                              1150
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  1190
```

```
IF FLAG=0 THEN NU=NU+1: BAD$(NU)=TEST$+" : LINE
                                                                                                                                       MISSING
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                          PRINT"Do you want output to go to printer?"
                                                                                                                                                   IF RP>LP THEN P$="LEFT" ELSE P$="RIGHT"
                                                                                                                                    PAR$(NI)="LINE " +LEFT$(A$, P)+" :
                                                                                                                                                                 PAR$(NI)=PAR$(NI)+P$+" PARENTHESIS"
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       IF A$="Y" OR A$="Y" THEN PFLAG=1
                                                                                                                                                                                                                             *** Display results ***
                                                                                                       *** Paren missing ***
                                                           RP=LP THEN 1310
             +LEFT$(A$, P)
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                           CLS:PRINT:PRINT
                              TEST$=""
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      GOSUB 1640
                                            NEXT NI
                                                                                                                                                                                 RP=0:LP=0
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         GOSUB 120
                                                                                                                                                                                                 GOTO 920
                                                                          NI=NI+1
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       1340
1350
1360
                                           1250
1260
1270
                                                                                                                                                  1290
1300
1310
1320
1230
                                                                                                      1275
                                                                                                                                                                                                                             1232
```

Fig. 8-2. Listing for Program Proofer. (Continued from page 93.)

```
IF BAD$(N4)=BAD$(N4-1)THEN 1460
                                                                                                                 IF PFLAG=1 THEN LPRINT BAD$(N4)
                                       *** Show BAD words and Variables
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                IF Z3/11=INT(Z3/11)GOSUB 1600
                                                                           IF ZU/11=INT(ZU/11)GOSUB 1600
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                          IF PFLAG=1 LPRINT PAR$(Z3)
                                                                                                                                                                                            *** Show Missing Parens ***
1380 IF DOSFLAG=0 GOSUB 1700
                                                                                                    PRINT BAD$ (N4)
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                              PRINT PAR$(Z3)
                                                              FOR N4=1 TO NU
                                                                                                                                                                                                                      FOR Z3=1 TO NI
                                                                                                                            20=20+1
                                                                                                                                          NEXT N4
                                                                                                                                                       GOSUB 1600
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       NEXT
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     PRINT
             ZU=1
                                                                                                                                                                   Z3=1
                                                                                                                                                                                            1485
                                      1395
             1390
                                                                                                                                                     1470
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             1510
1520
1530
                                                                                                                                          1460
                                                                                       1420
                                                                                                                                                                   1480
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   1540
                                                                                                                             1450
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  1500
                                                                                                                 1440
```

```
** POSSIBLE MISPELLINGS AND VARIABLES
                      KEY TO RETURN TO MAIN MENU"
END OF LIST
                                                                  PRINT TAB(22)"HIT ANY KEY"
                      PRINT TAB(15) "HIT ANY
                                                                                                                                                                                                       *** Error Trap ***
                                                                                                                                                                     CMD"O", NU, BAD$(1)
RETURN
TAB(20)" --
                                                                                                   CLS:PRINT:PRINT
                                                                                                                                     PRINT TAB(14)"
                                GOSUB 120
GOTO 380
                                                                             GOSUB 120
                                                                                        RETURN
                                                                                                                                                           RETURN
 PRINT
PRINT
                                                       PRINT
                                                                                                                                                PRINT
                                                                                                               PRINT
                                                                                                                          PRINT
                                                                                                                                                                                                       1715
                                           1590
1600
                                                                 1610
1620
                                                                                        1630
1640
                                                                                                              1650
                                                                                                                                               1680
                                                                                                                                                          1690
                                                                                                                         1660
```

Fig. 8-2. Listing for Program Proofer. (Continued from page 95.)

1720 IF ERR/2+1<>54 GOTO 1790

1730 CLS:PRINT

```
PRINT TAB(15)"Hit any key to resume program"
PRINT TAB(20)"That file does not exist!"
                                                                                         UNKNOWN ERROR
                                                                                                       PRINT TAB(25) "IN LINE "; ERL
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             * *** Help Routine ***
                                                                                         PRINT TAB(20)"****
              FOR N9=1 TO 500
                                                                                                                        FOR N9=1 TO 500
                                                                                                                                                                     CLS:PRINT:PRINT
                                                                            PRINT: PRINT
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                GOSUB 1850
                                                            RESUME 870
                                                                                                                                                     RESUME 380
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            1920 CLS:PRINT
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  GOSUB 120
                                                                                                                                       NEXT N9
                               NEXT N9
                                                                                                                                                                                    RETURN
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 RETURN
                                                                                                                                                                                                   PRINT
                                              CLS
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                              1915
                                                                                                                                      1830
1840
                                                                                                                                                                                    1860
```

```
PRINT"this program will sort your bad words and variables
                                     PRINT"be a legal Disk basic name, or your input will be"
PRINT"rejected."
PRINT"Program wants the name of file to be proofread.
                                                                                                                                                                       PRINT"If you have Newdos 80 2.0 or a later release"
                                                                                                                                                                                        PRINT"with the CMD"; CHR$ (34); "O"; CHR$ (34); "sorting
                                                                                            LINE INPUT"ENTER FILENAME :";F$
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     GOSUB 1850
                                                                                                                               GOSUB 1850
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   GOTO 1870
                                                                                                                                                  CLS: PRINT
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   for you."
                                                                                                                                                                                                           feature"
                    Must"
                                                                                                              RETURN
                                                                         PRINT
 1930
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   2040
                                                       1950
1960
1970
1980
                                                                                                                              1990
                                                                                                                                                                                                                               2030
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    2050
```

Fig. 8-2. Listing for Program Proofer. (Continued from page 97.)

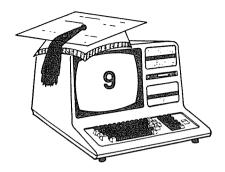
RP, while left parenthesis increase the value of LP. After the whole program line has been checked, Program Proofer compares LP and RP. If they don't match, then the line in which the error appears is stored in a string array PAR\$(n), along with a note as to whether a left or right parenthesis is missing. (If one statement is missing a left parenthesis, while another statement later in that line is missing a right parenthesis, the values of LP and RP will match and the error will not be caught. This should, however, be very rare.

When the end of file (EOF) marker is encountered, the user is asked if results should be directed to a printer as well as to the screen. Then, if NEWDOS/80 2.0 is available, the array BAD\$(n) is sorted into alphabetical order. Those of you using other disk operating systems or sorting routines should note that taking advantage of this feature requires only a single line; the CMD"0" invokes the sort. "NU" is specified to indicate that all NU units of the array BAD\$(n) should be sorted, beginning with element number 1. If for some reason you do not want the array sorted, even though NEWDOS/80 2.0 is available, simply "lie" to the program when asked.

The suspect words are then printed out in groups of 11 words/lines. A counter, CU, keeps track of how many words are printed or listed. A word/line combination is displayed only if it does not equal the previous word/line, so if a variable or bad word appears several times in a single line, it is pointed out just once. When CU can be evenly divided by 11, the program branches to a "paging" subroutine at line 1010. Once the variables and bad words are listed, the program displays all the lines which contain missing parentheses.

A number of enhancements are possible. The program could be extended to check each variable against the keyword list, using INSTR, to see if any have inadvertently included an illegal keyword. This would be especially helpful for those of you with Model I/III computers who like to use long, descriptive variable names.

Checking the spelling of a computer program is much easier than proofreading a document, because the number of legal words is severely limited. Once a computer is told what words are allowable in a program, it is a simple matter to leave some of the tedious debugging to the machine.



## **Automatic**

## **Programmer Documentation**

Care to coast awhile? Here's the program you don't even have to key in. Well, that is not entirely accurate. "Automatic Programmer Documentation" is a help file for the preceding three modules. It is included here to demonstrate how such help programs can be used to make a complex piece of software more usable by a beginner. The program itself actually has no other function than to serve as an introduction to the Automatic Programmer series. You have four options in this case.

- 1) If you have purchased the disk containing all the programs in this book, the program should be included on your disk running the three Automatic Programmer programs. It will be called as needed, and serve as a menu gateway to the others.
  - 2) You may type in the program as presented.
- 3) You can type in the BASIC program lines, but write the others using Screen Editor. It will prepare the screens for you with less typing on your part.
- 4) Just skip this chapter entirely and do without the help file when running the other three programs.

| A\$<br>L\$<br>N | User input from keyboard through INKEY\$ String of 64 asterisks. Loop counter. |
|-----------------|--|
|-----------------|--|

Fig. 9-1. Variables used in Autoprogrammer Instructions.

| 10 " *********************************** | ************************************** | 70 ON ERROR GOTO 270  80 L\$=STRING\$(64," ** ** **)  90 CLS  1.00  PRINT************************************ | Automatic Programmer      | By: David D. Busch | This program allows you to use your computer *"; some of the Basic program lines for many common |
|--|--|---|---------------------------|--------------------|--|
|  | * * Auto                               | ON ERROR GOTO 270 L\$=STRING\$(64,"*" CLS  NT"***********************************                             | PRINT"*  *** PRINT"*  *** | PRINT<br>PRINT     | 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1  |

```
dimensioning an array, CLEARing memory, writing
                                                                                                                                                          ional screens (like this one), menus, are done
                                                                                    Many initial 'housekeeping' tasks,
                It will produce a 'skeleton'
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       PRINT "UNKNOWN ERROR IN LINE #"; ERL: FOR N=1 TO 500:NEXT
                                                 structure which you can 'flesh' out with
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                          290 PRINT"PLEASE INSERT DISK CONTAINING AUTOMATIC"
                                                                                                                                                                                                                 HIT ANY KEY
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                              PRINT"PROGRAMMER IN DISK DRIVE": RESUME 1110
                                                                                                                                                                                                                      !
              automatically.
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       IF ERR/2+1=54 GOTO 290
                                                                                                                                                                                             PRINT" *"; TAB(63) " *";
                                                                                       your own.
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   IFINKEY$=""THEN250
                                                                   subroutines of
programs
PRINT"*
                                                                                                                                          instruct-
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 PRINT L$;
                                                                                                                                                                             for you.
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    GOTO 310
                                                                                                                                                                                                              PRINT "*
                                                 PRINT" *
                                                                                    PRINT"*
                                                                                                       such as
                                                                                                                                                           PRINT"*
                                                                                                                       PRINT"*
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                          N:RESUME 90
                                coding
                                                 180
                                                                                    190
                                                                                                                       200
                                                                                                                                                          210
                                                                                                                                                                                             220
230
```

Fig. 9-2. Program listing for Autoprogrammer Instructions.

```
so that the line numbers do not conflict with an
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 This process may be
 gram lines will be written and saved to disk.
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                          2.) Automatic Programmer may also be used
                                                                                                                                                           After a screen has been created, you may
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  aided instruction, games, or other program.
                                                                                                                       to create several frames or menus for
                                    HIT ANY KEY
                                                                                                                                                                                                                               program, and MERGE the two.
                                      1
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    computer *";
                                                                                      IF INKEY$="" GOTO 460
                                                                                                                                                                        * = *
                                                                                                                                         ************
                                                                                                                                                                            renumber it
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  business,
                                                                                                                                                                                                            existing
                                                                    PRINT L$;
                                                                                                                                                                                            PRINT "*
                                                                                                                                                                                                                               500 PRINT "*
430 PRINT "*
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  510 PRINT "*
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   PRINT "*
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         540 PRINT "*
                                                                                                                                                           PRINT "*
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      530 PRINT "*
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 repeated
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             create
                                   440 PRINT
                                                                                                                                                          480
                                                                                                                                                                                             490
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    520
```

Fig. 9-2. Program listing for Autoprogrammer Instructions. (Continued from page 103.)

```
GOSUB lines for you, and insert REMARK pointers
                                the
                                                             The computer can also build a
                                                                                            you, from your input of the number of choices,
                                                                                                                                                          When using this feature, the program will
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    The program lines written include error
You may construct a menu, too. If you
                                of
                                                                                                                                                                                                                        locations so you know where to write each
                               build a custom menu, you can make use
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        HIT ANY KEY
                                                                                                                            those choices, and other data.
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                          !
                                                       writer routine.
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      IF INKEY$=""GOTO 780
                                                                                                           *=*
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   CLS:PRINT L$;
                                                                                                                                                                           write ON...
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        subroutine.
                                                                                                             labels for
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     traps and
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     PRINT L$;
                                                                                                                                                                                       PRINT "*
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  PRINT "*
                                                                                                                            PRINT "*
                                                                                                                                                                                                         at those
PRINT "*
                              PRINT "*
                                                             PRINT "*
                                                                             menu for
                                                                                            PRINT "*
                                                                                                                                                          PRINT "*
                                                                                                                                                                                                                        PRINT "*
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       PRINT "*
                  choose
                                                 screen
089
                                                                                                                                                                                                                         750
                                                                                                                                                           730
                               069
                                                             700
                                                                                                                            720
                                                                                                                                                                                          740
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       760
                                                                                             710
```

Fig. 9-2. Program listing for Autoprogrammer Instructions. (Continued from page 105.)

```
3.) Automatic Programmer can also be used,
                                                                 a complete program, it will get the basics out
other helpful features that you do not have to
                                                                                                  way fast, and allow you to use your creativity
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     limited extent, to proofread the programs you
                                yourself. Although Automatic Programmer will
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            ten. It will check for misspelled keywords,
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                           parentheses, and some other errors.
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                               HIT ANY KEY
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  !
                                                                                                                                     counts the most.
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        910 PRINT<sup>m * m</sup>, TAB(63) <sup>m * m</sup>, 920 PRINT <sup>m *</sup>
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        4
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         mismatched
PRINT "*
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         have writ-
                                                   not write
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                              930 PRINT L$;
                   program
PRINT "*
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      PRINT "*
                                                                  PRINT "*
                                                                                                                     where it
                                                                                                                                    PRINT "*
                                                                                                                                                                     860 PRINT "*
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        PRINT "*
                                                                                                  PRINT "*
                                                                                                                                                                                                     PRINT "*
810 PRINT "*
                                                                                  of the
                                                                                                                                                                                                                         to
a
                                820
                                                                  830
                                                                                                  840
                                                                                                                                    850
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      880
                                                                                                                                                                                                       870
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        890
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                          006
```

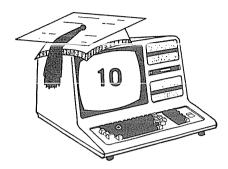
```
o Program to be proofed must be saved in ASCII
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                If Newdos
                                                                                                                                                                                                              first statement in a line. The module will
                                                                                                                                           o Program to be checked must NOT be 'packed'.
                                                                                                                                                                              should be a space between the line number
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                           o A cross reference list of 'bad' words and
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   best if the target program is first run
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                               used in the program is compiled.
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        packing/unpacking rou- *";
PRINT "* tines, which will insert spaces.
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      of the commercially available
                                                      Please note:
IF INKEY$="" GOTO 940
                                                                                      PRINT" *" ; TAB (63) " *";
                                " 四大大大大大大大大大大大大大大大
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                           •
≠
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 *
=
*
                                                                                                                          * = *
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    through one 1030 PRINT "*
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                              80 2.0 or
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            variables
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                           PRINT "*
                                                                                                                                                                                                               1010 PRINT "*
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 1020 PRINT "*
                                                                                                                                                                              1000 PRINT "*
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                          1050 PRINT "*
                                                     PRINT "*
                                                                                                     PRINT "*
                                                                                                                                           PRINT "*
                                                                                                                                                                                                and the
                                                                                                                           form.
                                                                                                                                                               There
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       1040
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                               1060
940
                                                     096
                                                                                                                                           066
```

Fig. 9-2. Program listing for Autoprogrammer Instructions. (Continued from page 107.)

|  |             |       |            | 1          | E   | 8       | 8                                 | 8              | 2                          | 8                       | 2                            | 8     | 8                                     |             |         |                 |               |               |      |
|--|-------------|-------|------------|------------|---|---------|-----------------------------------|----------------|----------------------------|-------------------------|------------------------------|-------|---------------------------------------|-------------|---------|-----------------|---------------|---------------|------|
|  |             |       |            |            | 報   | ÷.      | #                                 | - (X           | -BE                        | <b>e</b>                | ¢(                           | *     | 泰                                     |             |         |                 |               |               | Ì    |
| later is used, this list will be sorted. | HIT ANY KEY |       | 0          |            | 日本设备等的各种的设备的设备的设备的设备的设备的设备的设备的设备的设备的设备的设备 |         | Hit 'R' to repeat instructions. * | a Press ===    | 1.) To run Screen Editor * | 2.) To run DB Starter * | 3.) To run Program Proofer * | -fit  | · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · | GOTO 1210   | GOTO 90 | RUN"SCREEN/BAS" | "DBSTART/BAS" | "PROOFER/BAS" |      |
| er                                       |             |       | 110        |            | *   |         | 耳                                 |                |                            |                         |                              |       | 松林林                                   |             | 8       | SC              |               |               |      |
| lat                                      |             |       | GOTO 1100  |            | 水水水                                       |         |                                   |                |                            |                         | _                            |       | 水水水                                   | A\$=""      | A\$="I" | RUN             | RUN           | RUN           |      |
|  |             |       |            |            | # C .                                     | ₩ E ( . | ₩ L (                             | <b>★ E (</b> : | # E ( .                    | ₩ L ( .                 | * = (                        | * a ( | ₩ ( )                                 |             |         | THEN            | THEN          | THEN          |      |
|  |             |       | =          | <b>-</b> . | TAB(11)                                   | (1)     | 3(11                              | 3(11           | (11                        | 3(11)                   | (1)                          | 3(11  | 3(1)                                  | F. TE       | OR O    | H               | Ë             | _             |      |
| * = 4                                    | - 4<br>- 2  | L & S | INKEY\$="" | LNI        | TAE                                       | TAB (   | TAB (                             | TAB (          | TAB (                      | TAB (                   | TAB (                        | TAB ( | TAB (                                 | (EY\$       | A\$="R" | A\$="1"         | A\$="2"       | A\$="3"       | 1210 |
| 1070 PRINT                               | PRINT       | PRINT | IF INK     | CLS:PRINT  | PRINT                                     | PRINT   | PRINT                             | PRINT          | PRINT                      | PRINT                   | PRINT                        | PRINT | PRINT                                 | A\$=INKEY\$ | IF A\$= | IF AS=          | IF A\$=       | IF A\$=       | S    |
| 1070                                     | 1080        | 1090  | 1100       | 1110       | 1120                                      | 1130    | 1140                              | 1150           | 1160                       | 1170                    | 1180                         | 1190  | 1200                                  | 1210        | 1220    | 1230            | 1240          | 1250          | 1260 |
|  |             |       |            |            |   | ****    |                                   |                | -                          |                         |                              |       |                                       |             |         |                 |               |               |      |

Fig. 9-2. Program listing for Autoprogrammer Instructions. (Continued from page 109.)

Now, wasn't that easy? When the user specifies HELP in one of the Automatic Programmer modules, a branch to a line that reads RUN "AUTOPROG/DOC" will take place. This program will then be loaded, and display the introduction to the other programs. At the end, an INKEY\$ loop will accept one of three menu choices, loading and RUNning one of the three Auto Programmer modules. That's all there is to it. After a look at Figs. 9-1 and 9-2, class is dismissed for recess.



## Visual Maker

Though photographic in nature, conventional slide shows used in business presentations rely more on text material, charts, and graphs, than on actual pictorial subjects. "Visual Maker" is a pair of programs written for the TRS-80 Model I/III and 4 that allows designing a series of text and graphics "frames," specifying how long each should appear on the CRT screen, and assembling them into a finished slide show.

Absolutely no user programming is required. The operator simply "draws" on the CRT screen, using the arrow keys for cursor control, placing alphanumeric characters and two types of graphic blocks as desired. Then, when the <ENTER> key is hit, and that frame is stored to disk. When all desired frames are assembled, a second program is run. The operator is given the opportunity to load and briefly check frames, in order, and then specify how many seconds each should appear on the screen. Then, a BASIC program is written that will display the frames as desired in a completed, ready-to-run slide show.

Visual Maker is similar in concept to Screen Editor, which writes BASIC subroutines that reproduce desired instructional screens. In fact, I used Screen Editor to write all the instructions in Visual Maker. The idea is to allow the user to enter various parameters, and then have the computer generate BASIC code automatically.

Visual Maker is very flexible in the ways users may assemble

| A\$     | Used in INKEY\$ loop.               |
|---------|-------------------------------------|
| AN\$    | Used in INKEY\$ loop.               |
| В       | Beginning of video memory.          |
| B1      | ASC value of A\$.                   |
| С       | Cursor character.                   |
| C4      | Line number being PEEKed.           |
| E       | End of video memory.                |
| EFLAG   | End of character line.              |
| F\$     | Name of output file.                |
| FLAG    | Autonumbering flag.                 |
| FR      | Frame counter.                      |
| 'N      | Loop counter.                       |
| N1-N3   | Loop counters.                      |
| PR\$(n) | Program lines stored in this array. |
| SP      | Space.                              |
| T       | Value found by current PEEK.        |
| T2      | Position of cursor.                 |
| Z       | POKE position for cursor.           |
| 1       | •                                   |

Fig. 10-1. Variables used in Visual Maker.

slide shows. Using the first program of the pair, a broad "library" of frames may be created that can be linked together by the assembler program in any order desired. This is very similar to the way in which many photographic slide shows are put together. Corporate communications departments draw heavily on an existing stock file of slides, minimizing the number of new frames that must be created for a given show. The same basic material can be used to develop a program tailored for employees, stockholders, directors, and the public.

| ANIC    | Head in INUCCYA Inc.                    |
|---------|---|
| AN\$    | Used in INKEY\$ loop.                   |
| F\$     | Filename of output file                 |
| FR      | Frame counter.                          |
| IC      | Increment to increase line number.      |
| LN      | Line number.                            |
| N\$     | Name of next slide to be added to show. |
| N2-N3   | Loop counters.                          |
| PR\$    | Program line being built.               |
| SC\$    | Seconds to display frame.               |
| SP\$    | Space                                   |
| TM\$(n) | Stores show program lines.              |

Fig. 10-2. Variables used in Show Assembler.

| 2200<br>2200<br>2200<br>2200<br>2200<br>2200 | 1 法法法法法法法法法法法法法法法法法法法法法法法法法法法法法法法法法法法法 |   | ) * Visual Maker * | * | 1 条件部的表示的表示的表示的表示的表示的表示的表示的形式 | ) CLEAR 10000 | DEFINT A-Y |       | CIS | 00 PRINT | !O PRINT TAB(9)" # This program may be used to write subrou- | TAB (9) " * | 10 PRINT TAB(9)"* screens such as this one. | <pre>i0 PRINT TAB(9)"* You may build new screens from scratch, **</pre> | :0 PRINT TAB(9)"* edit existing ones, and then assemble | 10 PRINT TAB(9)"* the screens or 'frames' into a slide | 10 PRINT TAB(9)"* show. The assembler module will ask you | 90 PRINT TAB(9)" how long you want each 'slide' to appear | TAB(9)"* | .0 PRINT TAB(9)" be ready to run. | 20 PRINT TAB(9)"* | 10 DRINT TAR(9)"* HIT ANY KRY TO CONTINIE . |
|--|--|---|--------------------|---|-------------------------------|---------------|------------|-------|-----|----------|--|-------------|---|---|---|--|---|---|----------|-----------------------------------|-------------------|---|
|  | 1 林林林                                  | 4 | #                  | * | 中华华 日                         | CLEAR         | DEFIN      | DIM P | CLS |          | PRIN   | PRIN        | PRIN  | PRIN  | PRIN  | PRIN   | PRIN  |   |          | PRIN                              |                   | NTOO  |

| 320 PRINT "* Shift Left Arrow: Move cursor to far left of row. 330 PRINT "* Up Arrow: Move cursor one row up. 340 PRINT "* Shift Up Arrow: Move cursor to top of screen. |
|--|
| 350 PRINT "* Down Arrow : Move cursor one space down   |

Fig. 10-3. Program listing for Visual Maker.

| Print graphics block - | Print graphics block - | Process the frame.                     |             | 4_10 PRINT<br>ntratetratetratetratetratetratetratetrat | ÷                              |                             | 8                                     | 8                     | 8.0              | <b>52</b>  | 2            | 82                                       |                                  |                                  |                             | 8  | E                 |
|------------------------|------------------------|--|-------------|--|--------------------------------|-----------------------------|---------------------------------------|-----------------------|------------------|------------|--------------|--|----------------------------------|----------------------------------|-----------------------------|--|-------------------|
| raph                   | raph                   | the                                    | <u>-</u>    | 各  |                                |                             | 安全会会                                  | *                     | 长                | 4          | *            | 各个本本                                     |                                  |                                  |                             | 水水水水                                       | *                 |
| rint g                 | rint g                 | rocess                                 | Hit any key | ***************************************                |                                |                             | PRINT TAB(16) " ********************* | Do you want automatic | Ç.               |            | 1            | TAB(16) mx水水水水水水水水水水水水水水水水水水水水水水水水水水水水水水 |                                  |                                  |                             | PRINT TAB(16) **************************** |                   |
| P <sub>1</sub>         | <u>е</u>               | <u>Б</u>                               | Hit a       | ***  |                                |                             | 有水水水                                  | auto                  | ring             | )          | oice         | 不去去去?                                    |                                  | 7                                |                             | ***  | ţo:               |
|                        |                        | ••                                     | 1           | 4 4 4  |                                |                             | 计字字字字                                 | want                  | ımbeı            | ( N        | er Ch        | 本本本本本                                    | 00                               | L . FR=                          |                             | 不会会会                                       | wish              |
|                        |                        |  |             | **   | 420                            | RINT                        | 去午午午                                  | you                   | frame numbering? | (X/N)      | Enter Choice | 中华华华                                     | TO 5(                            | LAG=]                            | RINT                        | 女女女女                                       | Do you wish to:   |
| **                     |                        | *";<br>ITER >                          |             | *  | GOTO                           | NT:P                        | 女女女女                                  | Do                    | fra              |            | 1            | 女女女女                                     | OS .                             | y" F                             | NT:P                        | ***  | Do                |
|                        | 4                      | *";<br>< ENTER                         |             | **   | 2<br>2                         | : PRI                       | ***                                   |                       |                  |            |              | 水水水水                                     | N\$=#                            | "=\$N                            | : PRI                       | * * * *                                    |                   |
| <b>ම</b>               | æ                      | ~                                      |             | **   | F AS                           | RINT                        | * a (9                                | 本 (9                  | * 三(9            | ¥ m (9     | * m (9       | % m (9                                   | IF A                             | OR A                             | RINT                        | 6) m *                                     | * a (9            |
| * 2                    | *                      | · ·                                    | **<br>E     | **   | A\$=INKEY\$:IF A\$="" GOTO 420 | CLS:PRINT:PRINT:PRINT:PRINT | PAB (1                                | TAB(16)"*             | PAB(16) "*       | TAB(16) "* | TAB(16) "*   | 'AB(1                                    | AN\$=INKEY\$:IF AN\$="" GOTO 500 | AN\$="Y" OR AN\$="y" FLAG=1:FR=1 | CLS:PRINT:PRINT:PRINT:PRINT | 'AB (1                                     | PRINT TAB(16) " * |
|                        | 380 PRINT "*           | " ; CHK\$ ( L49 ) ; "<br>390 PRINT " * |             | INT  | =INKE                          | 3:PR1                       | INT 1                                 | PRINT 1               | ٠.               | PRINT 1    | PRINT 1      | PRINT 1                                  | S=INK                            | AN\$=                            | 3:PR1                       | INT 1                                      | L TNI             |
| 370 PRINT "CHR\$(191)  | PR                     | HKŞ<br>PR]                             | 400 PRINT   | 410 PRINT  |                                | CLE                         |                                       | ٠.                    |                  |            |              |  | ANS                              | IF                               | _                           |  |                   |
| 376<br>"CB             | 380                    | ) % €<br>06 €                          | 400         | 4 H C  | 420                            | 430                         | 440                                   | 450                   | 460              | 470        | 480          | 490                                      | 500                              | 510                              | 520                         | 530  | 540               |

```
TAB(16) "**********************
 (C)reate a frame.
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         PRINT TAB(19)"*************
             (E)dit a frame.
                          (Q)uit session.
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     PRINT TAB(25)"";:LINEINPUT" Filename:
                                                 -- Enter Choice
                                                                                                                                                                                          Enter a file name
                                                                                                                                                                                                                    series.
                                                                                                                                                                                                       frame
                                                                        AN$=INKEY$:IF AN$="" GOTO 610
                                                                                                                                                                                                    for this
                                                                                                                                                               CLS:PRINT:PRINT:PRINT:PRINT
                                                                                       END
                                                                                                                                                                                                                 TAB(19)"*
                                                                                     OR AN$="q"
                                                                                                               680
                                                                                                                           680
                                                                                                  GOTO 680
                                                                                                                                                                                                               IF FLAG=1 PRINT
                                                                                                               GOTO
                                                                                                                           GOTO
TAB(16)"*
            TAB(16)"*
                                    TAB(16)"*
                                                TAB(16)"*
                                                                                                                                       GOTO
                                                                                                                                                                                       PRINT TAB(19)"*
                                                                                                                                                                                                    TAB(19)"*
                                                                                                                                                                                                                            TAB(19)"*
                        TAB(16)"*
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                F$=LEFT$ (F$,8)
                                                                                    AN$="Q"
AN$="C"
                                                                                                                          AN$="e"
                                                                                                              AN$="C"
                                                                                                                                     AN$="E"
                                                                                                                                                   GOTO 610
                                                                                                                                                                                                    PRINT
                                                                                                                                                                                                                            PRINT
                                                             PRINT
                                                PRINT
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        PRINT
            PRINT
                                    PRINT
PRINT
                        PRINT
                                               590
                                                                                                              640
                                                                                                                                                                           069
```

Fig. 10-3. Program listing for Visual Maker. (Continued from page 115.)

```
*** Check Keyboard for Arrow input or character
FLAG=1 THEN F$=LEFT$(F$,5)+MID$(STR$(FR),2)
                                                                                                                                      PR$(16)=LEFT$(PR$(16),LEN(PR$(16))-1)
             IF AN$="C" OR AN$="c" CLS:GOTO 890
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         A$=INKEY$:IF A$="" GOTO 940
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       A$=CHR$(13) GOTO 1400
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     GOTO 1120
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        B1=A GOTO 1090
                                                                                                                        INPUT #1,PR$(16)
                                                                                                                                                                                   B=15360:E=16384
                                                                           INPUT #1,PR$(N)
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      A$=CHR$(91)
                                                                                                                                                       PRINT PR$(16);
                             OPEN "I", I, F$
                                                           FOR N=1 TO 15
                                                                                          PRINT PR$(N);
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                          B1=ASC(A$)
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 POKE Z,C
                                                                                                          NEXT N
                                                                                                                                                                      CLOSE
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 SP=32
                                                                                                                                                                                                                   C=43
                                                                                                                                                                                                    Z=B
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            940
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        950
960
970
                                                                                                                                                                    88
90
00
00
                                                                                                                                        860
```

```
Z1=Z-15360:IF Z1/32=INT(Z1/32) THEN C=191
                                                                                                         IF Z+1<E THEN Z=Z+1:POKE Z,C
 GOTO 1600
                                                GOTO 1260
                                                         GOTO 1330
                                                                            B1 = 149
                                                                    B1 = 191
                   GOTO
                             GOTO
                                      GOTO
                                                                                                                                * *** Cursor Up ***
                                                                                                                                             IF Z-64<B GOTO 940
                             A$=CHR$ (27)
                                      A$=CHR$(10)
          A$=CHR$ (24)
                   A$=CHR$ (26)
IF A$=CHR$(25)
                                                                   B1=64 THEN
                                                                             THEN
                                                         A$=CHR$(8)
                                                A$=CHR$ (9)
                                                                                                                                                    POKE Z,SP
                                                                            B1 = 38
                                                                                               POKE Z, A
                                                                                                                   GOTO 940
                                                                                                                                                                                  POKE Z,C
                                                                                                                                                                                                       940
                                                                                                                                                               Z = Z - 64
                                                                                                                                                                                                       GOTO
                                                                                                                                                                                             C = 43
                                                                                       A=B1
                                     1030
                                                                 1060
                                                                                                        1100
                                                                                                                               1115
                                                                                                                                                     1130
                                                                                                                                                              1140
1150
1160
                            1020
                                               1040
                                                         1050
                                                                           1070
                                                                                     1080
                                                                                               1090
```

Fig. 10-3. Program listing for Visual Maker. (Continued from page 117.)

```
Z1=Z-15360:IF Z1/32=INT(Z1/32) THEN C=191
POKE Z,C
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                              Z1=Z-15360:IF Z1/32=INT(Z1/32) THEN C=191
                                                                                                                                       Z=Z+1
Z1=Z-15360:IF Z1/32=INT(Z1/32) THEN C=191
                                                                                                 * *** Cursor Right ***
                                                                                                                                                                                                     1 *** Cursor Left ***
*** Cursor Down ***
               IF Z+64=>E GOTO 940
                                                                                                                IF Z+1>E GOTO 940
POKE Z,SP
                                                                                                                                                                                                              IF Z-1<1 GOTO 940
                                                                                                                                                                                                                        POKE Z,SP
Z=Z-1
                           POKE Z,SP
                                                                                                                                                          POKE Z,C
C=43
                                                                               GOTO 940
                                                                                                                                                                               GOTO 940
                                     7=2+64
                                                                     C = 43
                         1200
1210
1220
1230
1240
1250
1185
                1190
                                                                                                                                                                                                      1325
1330
1340
1350
1360
                                                                                                 1255
                                                                                                                 1260
1270
1280
1290
1300
1310
```

```
PR$=PR$+CHR$(T):IF T<>32 THEN EFLAG=N3
                                                                                                                                                                                                                  PRINT #1, CHR$(34); PR$(N); CHR$(34);
                                                IF Z<>E-1 THEN POKE Z, SP:CU=1
                                                                                                                                                                                ' *** Save File to Disk ***
OPEN "O",1,F$
: FOR N=1 TO 16
                                                              FOR N=0 TO 1023 STEP 64
                                                                                                                      POKE N1+15360,191
                                                                                                          T=PEEK (N1+15360)
                                                                                  FOR N1=N TO N+63
N3=N3+1
                                     *** Read Screen ***
                                                                                                                                                         PR$ (C4)=PR$:PR$=""
                                                                                                                                              NEXT NI
                                                                                                                                                                     NEXT N
                                                                                                                                                                                                                               NEXT N
POKE Z,C
                       30TO 940
                                                                         C4=C4+1
            C=43
                                                                                                                                                        1490
1370
1380
1390
                                                1400
                                    1395
                                                                       1420
                                                                                                                                                                                                                  1530
                                                                                  1430
                                                                                               1440
                                                                                                         1450
                                                                                                                                            1480
                                                                                                                                                                   1500
                                                                                                                                1470
```

Fig. 10-3. Program listing for Visual Maker. (Continued from page 119.)

CLOSE 1

```
1595 ' *** Jump Cursor To Right Margin ***
                                                                                                                                                                                        * *** Jump Cursor to Left Margin ***
                          1575 * *** Calculate Cursor Row ***
                                             1580 Tl=INT((Z-B)/64)+1
1590 RETURN
                                                                                                         T2=(T1*64)+15359
IF T2>E GOTO 940
POKE Z,SP
                                                                                                                                                                                                                      T2=(T1*64)+15296
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    IF T2<B GOTO 940
                                                                                                                                                                                                            GOSUB 1580
                                                                                               GOSUB 1580
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                              POKE Z_r SP
Z=T2
                                                                                                                                                      POKE Z,C
C=43
                                                                                                                                                                           GOTO 940
1560 FR=FR+1
1570 GOTO 520
                                                                                                                                           z=T2
                                                                                                                                                                                                              1680
1690
1700
1710
                                                                                                                                                                                            1675
                                                                                               1600
                                                                                                         1610
1620
1630
1640
1650
```

```
*** Jump Cursor to Bottom of Screen ***
                                                                                                                     *** Jump Cursor to Top of Screen ***
                                                                                                                                                  IF Z-T2<B GOTO 940
                                                   T2=(16-T1)*64
IF T2+Z>E GOTO
                                                                                                                                          T2=(T1-1)*64
                                          GOSUB 1580
                                                                    POKE Z,SP
Z=Z+T2
                                                                                                                                  GOSUB 1580
                                                                                                                                                          POKE Z,SP
Z=Z-T2
                                                                                                                                                                              POKE Z,C
C=43
POKE Z,C
                  GOTO 940
                                                                                      POKE Z,C
                                                                                                        GOTO 940
                                                                                                                                                                                                 GOTO 940
       C = 43
                                                                                               C=43
                             1755
                                          1760
1770
1780
1790
                                                                                                                                          1850
                                                                                                                                                  1860
                                                                                                                                                                     1880
1890
1900
                                                                                      1810
                                                                                              1820
1830
                                                                                                                     1835
                                                                             1800
                                                                                                                                  1840
```

Fig. 10-3. Program listing for Visual Maker. (Continued from page 121.)

```
PRINT TAB(14)"**
PRINT TAB(14)"*

PRINT TAB(14)"*

PRINT TAB(14)"*
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     show now being
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                           *** Open File to be Assembled ***
                                                                                                                                                                105 * *** Increment Line Counter
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         CLS:PRINT:PRINT:PRINT:PRINT
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   slide
                                                                                                                                                                                              110 LN=LN+IC:PR$=STR$(LN)+SP$
120 RETURN
                                                          女女女女女女女女女女女女女女女女女女女女女女
                             Show Assembler
                                                                                                                     IC=10:LN=10:FR-1
                                                                                                      SP$=CHR$ (32)
                                                                         CLEAR 10000
                                                                                        DIM TM$(16)
                                                                                                                                     100 GOTO 130
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     PRINT
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            125
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                          140
                                                          50
50
80
80
```

```
PRINT TAB(14) ***************
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       TAB(14)"* ('Q' to quit.)
TAB(14)"*****************
                                                 PRINT:PRINT:PRINT TAB(16)"===> Enter name:
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         next frame to be added
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        Enter the name of the
                                                                                                                                                                                                     to the slide show.
                                                                                                                                   245 ' *** Input name of next frame ***
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                          PRINT TAB(16)"===> Enter name:
  assembled.
                                                                                                                                                                                   260 PRINT:PRINT:PRINT:PRINT
               PRINT TAB(14)"*
TAB(14)"*
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      TAB(14)"*
                                                                                                                                                                                                                     PRINT TAB(14)"*
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      TAB(14)"*
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       TAB(14)"*
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       TAB(14)"*
                                                                                 F$=LEFT$(F$,8)
OPEN "O",2,F$
                                                                 LINEINPUT F$
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                           PRINT: PRINT
PRINT
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         PRINT
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      PRINT
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        PRINT
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     PRINT
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       PRINT
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       PRINT
```

Fig. 10-4. Program listing for Show Assembler.

```
PRINT。PRINT。PRINT TAB(14) m本方法在古典古典古典古典古典古典古典古典古典古典古典古典古典古典古典古典
                                                                                                                                                                                            TAB(I.4) II 李张在我我我我我我我我我我我我我我我我我我我我我我我我我我我我我我我我
                                                                                                                            How long would you like
this frame to be displayed?
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                          1 ***** Load Frame from Disk *****
                                             *** Enter How Long to Display ***
                                                                                                                                                                                                                           PRINT TAB(16)"===> Enter seconds:
LINEINPUT N$
IF N$="Q" OR N$="q" GOTO 1030
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       500 OPEN "I", 1, N$
510 : FOR N=1 TO 16
                                                                                                                            TAB(14)"*
TAB(14)"*
                                                                                                              PRINT TAB(14)"*
                                                                                                                                                             TAB(14) "*
                                                                                                                                                                           TAB(14)"*
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                           LINEINPUT SC$
                                                                                                                                                                                                            PRINT: PRINT
                                                                                                                             PRINT
                                                                                                                                                             PRINT
                                                                                                                                                                                             PRINT
                                                                                                                                             PRINT
                                                                                                                                                                             PRINT
 360
370
                                                375
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                           495
                                                                                                              400
                                                                                                                                             420430
                                                                                                                                                                             440
                                                                                                                                                                                            450
```

```
TAB(14) "AAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAA
                                                                                                That frame okay?
                                                                                                                                                 (X/N)
                        FOR N2=1 TO 50:NEXT
                                                                                                                                                                                                  PRINT TAB(16)"===> Enter
                                              FOR N3=1 TO 100:NEXT N3 CLOSE 1
                                                                                     PRINT: PRINT: PRINT: PRINT
INPUT #1, TM$(N)
           PRINT TM$(N);
                                                                                                              TAB(14)"*
                                                                                                                         TAB(14)"*
                                                                                                                                     TAB(14)"*
                                                                                                                                                  TAB(14)"*
                                                                                                                                                             TAB(14)"*
                                                                                                                                                                                       PRINT: PRINT
                                      NEXT N
                                                                                                              PRINT
                                                                                                                                                                           PRINT
                                                                                                                          PRINT
                                                                                                                                      PRINT
                                                                                                                                                  PRINT
                                                                                                                                                              PRINT
                                                                        580
                                                                                     590
                                                                                                              009
```

Fig. 10-4. Program listing for Show Assembler. (Continued from page 125.)

IF AN\$="N" OR AN\$="n" GOTO 250 IF AN\$="Y" OR AN\$="Y" GOTO 720

GOTO 680 FR=FR+1

AN\$=INKEY\$:IF AN\$="" GOTO 680

```
PR$=PR$+"PRINT "+CHR$(34)+TM$(N)+CHR$(34)+";"
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    GOSUB 980
PR$=PR$+"ST=VAL(RIGHT$(T$,2))"
                                                  1 ***** Print to Disk *****
                                                                                                                                                                                                                        PR$=PR$+"SE$=STR$("+SC$+")"
                                                                           TM$(16)=LEFT$(TM$(16),63)
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            PR$=PR$+"FT=ST+VAL(SE$)"
                                                                                                                                                                                               PR$=PR$+"T$=TIME$"
                                                                                                                                          PRINT #2, PR$
PR$=""
                                                                                         FOR N=1 TO 16
                                                                                                     GOSUB 110
                                                                                                                              PRINT PR$
             PR$=PR$+"CLS"
GOSUB 980
                                                                                                                                                                                                            GOSUB 980
                                                                                                                                                                     NEXT N
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                               GOSUB 980
                                                                                                                                                                                   GOSUB 110
GOSUB 110
             740
750
                                                    755
                                                                                                                  790
                                                                                                                                                        820
830
                                                                                                                                                                                  840
                                                                                                                                                                                               850
860
870
```

```
PR$=PR$+"IF VAL(RIGHT$(TIME$,2))<>FT GOTO "+STR$(LN)
         PR$=PR$+"IF FT>59 THEN FT=FT-60"
                                                                                                                                                            PR$=PR$+"GOTO "+STR$(LN)
                                                                                                                 PR$=PR$+"CLS"
                                                                                                                            PRINT #2, PR$
                                                                                                                                                                      PRINT #2, PR$
                                                             PRINT #2, PR$
                                                                                                        GOSUB 110
                                                                                                                                                  GOSUB 110
                                                                                   GOSUB 110
GOSUB 980
                    GOSUB 980
                                        GOSUB 980
                                                                        PRINT PR$
                                                   GOTO 250
                                                                                             RETURN
                                                                                                                                      PR$=""
                                                                                                                                                                                CLOSE
                                                                                            1010
                                                                                  1000
                                                                                                                            1040
1050
1060
                                                                                                                 1030
                                                                                                                                                                      1080
                                                                                                                                                                                1090
                                                  970
980
                                                                        066
```

Fig. 10-4. Program listing for Show Assembler. (Continued from page 127.)

```
assemble them into a finished
                  Simply create frames using
                          the screen editor,
                                                                                                                                                                                     500
                                                                                                                                                                                  IF VAL(RIGHT$(TIME$,2))<>FT GOTO
                                             show.
                                                                                                                                                                          IF FT>59 THEN FT=FT-60
                                                                                                                                                        ST=VAL(RIGHT$(T$,2))
                                                                                                                                                                  FT=ST+VAL (SE$)
                                                                                                                                                SE$=STR$ (20)
                                                                                                                                        T$=TIME$
PRINT"
       PRINT"
                 PRINT"
                         PRINT"
                                 PRINT"
                                          PRINT"
                                                   PRINT"
                                                           PRINT"
                                                                             PRINT"
                                                                                     PRINT"
                                                                                              PRINT"
                                                                    PRINT"
                                                                                                      PRINT"
                                                                                                               PRINT"
                                                                                                                       PRINT"
                                                                                                                               PRINT"
                310
                                 330
                                          340
                                                  350
                                                                   370
                                                                            380
                                                                                    390
                                                                                             400
                                                                                                     410
                                                                                                              420
                                                                                                                      430
                                                                                                                               440
                                                                                                                                       450
                                                                                                                                                        470
                                                                                                                                                                 480
                                                                                                                                               460
```

Fig. 10-5. Example of program produced by Visual Maker.

Thus you may design several dozen or several hundred frames that can be used and reused in multiple slide programs. Existing frames can also be stored as a sort of visual "boilerplate" and edited to form entirely new slides—without creating the entire visual from scratch.

To use Visual Maker, the operator first is given the opportunity to review the commands the visual editor recognizes. The arrow keys move the cursor around the screen, with SHIFT plus arrow jumping the cursor to the far edges of the screen (top, left and right sides).

Striking an alphanumeric key reproduces that symbol on the screen, much like a word processing program. In addition, two different graphic blocks can be summoned by hitting the@key and the & key. An entirely new frame may be created, or the filename of an existing frame entered and that visual edited.

The screen editor written for Visual Maker is a fairly simple one. Exiting from a given screen line should only be done at a point in which a space already exists, otherwise the character in the cursor position will be erased, or the line can be finished. The cursor will wrap around to the next line. The graphic blocks can be used to build charts, graphs, and other material. When you are satisfied with the screen design, hit <ENTER>.

At this point, the program PEEKs each location of video memory and stores the 64 characters of each line in a string variable, PR\$(n). See Fig. 10-1 and the listing (Fig. 10-3) in this chapter. The sixteen elements of PR\$(n) correspond to the sixteen lines on the screen. The information about each frame is then stored on disk. The filename for the frame, F\$, is assembled from a prefix supplied by the user and a frame number, FR, which is incrementd each time a frame is designed during a given session.

This program may be changed easily by the user. If you do not like the graphics blocks provided, change the definitions of them to any character you please. You may also redefine any other keys to any other characters or graphics blocks. Simply choose keys that you do not plan to use in your screens. Some examples are the !, ", #, and % keys. Then, add program lines. For example, to change the quotation mark to a graphics block, type in:

## xxxx IF B1=34 THEN B1=148

The second program, Show Assembler, takes the frames you have developed and uses them to write a BASIC program that will

display the frames for the number of seconds you indicate. To use the program (Figs. 10-2 and 10-4) you must supply a name for the slide show being assembled and then enter the names of the frames you want in the proper order. The program also asks the number of seconds, generally from 2 to 30, that you want the frame displayed.

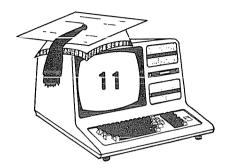
At this point the frame is loaded from disk and scrolled down your screen for a quick, last minute check. If it is indeed the frame you want, a complex series of procedures are carried out to write the necessary program lines to display the frame.

The lines assembled look something like this:

- 10 T=20' Time to display
- 20 T\$=TIME\$
- 30 SE\$=STR\$(T)
- 40 ST=VAL(RIGHT\$(T\$,2))
- 50 FT=ST+VAL(SE\$)
- 60 IF FT>59 THEN FT=FT-60
- 70 IF VAL(RIGHT\$(TIME\$,2))<>FT GOTO 70
- 80 CLS

It is these lines which are assembled and printed to disk, substituting the actual time the user specified to display the frame for T. In this way, each successive frame will be displayed for the amount of time desired by the user. A sample program produced by Visual Maker is listed in Fig. 10-5.

Compared to DB Starter, Visual Maker is much more sophisticated, because it will write complete, ready-to-run slide show style programs, and several features have been added in screen editing over Screen Editor itself.



## Global Replacer

Here is another program in the "REM-over" mold. This one, "Global Replacer," demonstrates how one program can be adapted to perform a second function. In concept the two are almost identical; instead of searching for remarks and then deleting them, however, the program looks for *any* string of the operator's choice. The string is then replaced with a second. The result is a global searchand-replace operation on a program, much like the same function in a word processing program.

Unlike some word processing programs, however, the user is shown each occurrence of the search string and offered the opportunity to replace it. You can pick and chose which to replace and which to leave alone. Variables and the listing are shown in Figs. 11-1 and 11-2, respectively.

The search string is input into S\$ in line 90; since LINEINPUT is used, the string may contain commas and other string delimiters. The replacement string is entered into RE\$. Then the input and output files are opened, and the first program (or text) line is loaded into A\$ in line 260.

The user has been offered the option of deciding whether or not the program queries before making the replacement. A search routine basically identical to that used in REM-over hunts for the string. The difference is that line 290, where the former program had 'R=INSTR(P,A\$, "REM")', Global Replacer substitutes S\$ for

| A\$ CH\$ E F\$ S\$ CH\$ P R RE\$ S\$ S\$ | Stores program line being searched. Used in INKEY\$ loop. Length of string being searched for. Filename of program being searched. Name of output file. Left portion of program line. Loop counter. Position to begin search. Position of target string. Replacement string. Target string. |
|--|---|
| S\$<br>Y\$                               | Target string. String of spaces as long as replacement string.  |
|  |   |

Fig. 11-1. Variables used in Global Replacer.

REM. If R does not equal zero, then the line is cut into two sections. L\$ stores everything in the line up to the beginning of the search string. R\$ includes the rest of the line *after* the search string. Another string, Y\$, is constructed from a series of blanks equal in length to the replacement string.

If the user has specified querying, control goes to line 360, where an INKEY\$ loop awaits keyboard input. Each time through the loop L\$, Y\$, and R\$ are printed on the same line, and are, after a short delay, followed by L\$, RE\$, and R\$, The result is a flashing display; the left and right portions of the program line remain on the screen, while the potential replacement flashes on and off in its place. A "Replace it?" prompt asks for a decision. The program will only replace the string if a "Y" is entered; any other key will leave the program line as it was. Once the string has been replaced, the program branches back to look further. If the search string is not found, the program line is printed to the disk in line 490, and a new program line fetched.

Global Replacer is a short but powerful program that will let you make changes rapidly in a given program. Should you decide to change the name of a variable, substitute one keyword for another (LPRINT for PRINT, for example), or change some prompts and other material within quotes, it will handle them all. Its chief advantage over using a text editor for the same chore is the ability to examine each line before making the change. Those without word processing programs can use this utility, too.

```
PRINTTAB(9)"Do you want to choose whether to replace each?"
                                                                                                                                                                                                                         PRINTTAB(12)"Enter name of program to be processed
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      PRINTTAB(17)"Enter string to replace with :"
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                PRINTTAB(18)"Enter string to search for :"
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   IF CH$="Y" OR CH$="Y" THEN CH=1
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             CH$=INKEY$:IF CH$="" GOTO 190
                                                                                                                                                           *** Set up Parameters
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    PRINTTAB (29) " (Y/N)"
经验的经验的经验的证据的经验的证据的
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       CLS:PRINT:PRINT
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        CLS:PRINT:PRINT
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             CLS:PRINT:PRINT
                                                                                                                                                                                                CLS:PRINT:PRINT
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                               LINEINPUT RE$
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       LINEINPUT S$
                                               GLOBAL
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                               LINEINPUT F$
                                                                                                                     60 CLEAR 5000
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        140
                                                                                                                                                           65
```

```
*** Open Disk Files ***
                                                                                                                                                                                             Y$=STRING$(LEN(RE$),32)
220 F1$=LEFT$(F$,8)+"/GBL"
                                                                                                                                                                                                         IF CH=0 THEN GOTO 460
                                                                             *** Load a line ***
                                                                                                                                                                                                                        *** Replace it? ***
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   PRINT @257, L$; Y$; R$
                                    OPEN "I",1,F$
OPEN "O",2,F1$
IF EOF(1) GOTO 520
                                                                                                          IF CH=1 THEN CLS
                                                                                                                                  R=INSTR(P,A$,S$)
IF R=0 GOTO 490
                                                                                                                                                         L$=LEFT$(A$,R-1)
                                                                                              LINEINPUT #1, A$
                                                                                                                                                                                  R$=MID$ (A$,R+E)
                                                                                                                                                                      E=LEN(S$)
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       B$=INKEY$
                  225
                                     230
                                                                             255
                                               240
250
                                                                                               260
                                                                                                         270
280
290
                                                                                                                                             300
310
320
330
340
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        360
```

Fig. 11-2. Program listing for Global Replacer.

FOR N1=1 TO 50:NEXT

```
IF A$="Y" OR A$="y" THEN RUN ELSE CLS
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                           PRINTTAB(21) "Process another file?"
                              PRINT @ 788, "Replace it? (Y/N)" IF B$="" GOTO 360
                                                                   IF B$="Y" OR B$="Y" GOTO 460
                                                                                                                                       P=INSTR(P, A$, RE$)+LEN(RE$)-1
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            A$=INKEY$:IF A$="" GOTO 560
                                                                                     P=INSTR(P, A$, S$)+LEN(S$)-1
                                                                                                                                                                          *** Print to disk ***
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    " *** Do it again? ***
                                                                                                                                                                                              PRINT #2, L$; RE$; A$ = R$
                                                                                                                                                                                                              IF CH=0 THEN PRINT A$
PRINT @257, L$; RE$; R$
                 FOR N1=1 TO 50:NEXT
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                           PRINTTAB(29) "(Y/N)"
                                                                                                                       A$=L$+RE$+R$
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                          PRINT: PRINT
                                                                                                      GOTO 290
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                GOTO 250
                                                                                                                                                        GOTO 290
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 CLOSE
                                                                                                                                                                                               490
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                          530
                                                                                                    450
                                                                                                                                                        480
                                                                                                                                                                           485
                                                                                     440
                                                                                                                       460
                                                                                                                                       470
                                                                                                                                                                                                                500
```

Fig. 11-2. Program listing for Global Replacer. (Continued from page 137.)



## Menu Master

Strictly speaking, "Menu Master" is not a program-writing utility. It won't generate any lines for you, nor change an existing program. However, it may speed your initial work somewhat, and it can be interfaced with a variety of BASIC programs to save you time.

Menu Master is an all-purpose menu program that allows you to summon any of 26 (or more) programs, functions, or commands at the press of a single key. With it on your system disk, and an AUTO command to load BASIC and run Menu Master on powerup, it is possible to switch on your TRS-80 and go directly to your word processing program, format a disk, or perform some other task by hitting only one key.

As listed, the program does 26 things that I judged most useful to me, as shown in Fig. 12-1, but you can substitute those more suited to your own needs. Again, Menu Master takes advantage of some of the features of NEWDOS/80. You may want to make several changes to adapt the program to your own DOS.

The 26 menu choices are displayed in two columns of 13 each. Every choice is preceded by a single letter or number; the first 10 are invoked by pressing numerals from zero through nine, while the last 16 require pressing a letter from A to P. Either lowercase or uppercase letters are fine.

The menu choices are sometimes a logical, sometimes eclectic. Pressing zero through three summons the directories of Drives zero to three. Since the numbers correspond to the drives, this series is easy to remember. If you have fewer than four drives, you can substitute a command of your choice.

Pressing other keys will command the system to copy a disk, change the name of a file, copy a single file from Drive:0 to Drive:1, or format a disk. You may also purge a disk, change a disk's name, or fiddle with the SYSTEM or DRIVE specifications.

If your computer is going to sit around all day, you can even turn on the clock and ask to be reminded when a certain time has passed. Should none of these please you, feel free to substitute commands of your own. The basic work has been accomplished for you. See the variable chart in Fig. 12-2, and the listing in Fig. 12-3.

On entering the program, the user should make some substitutions in lines 80-110 for his or her own word processing, communications, or spelling checker programs. The menu is then displayed (after a check) in line 160, to see if the timer has been set. If it has, the time for which the alarm is set is displayed at PRINT@ position 11, which is directly below the clock display on the Model I/III. Model 4 users can change this to suit.

An INKEY\$ loop awaits input and, to help out, a flashing cursor is printed after the ENTER CHOICE prompt by a routine at lines 340-370. While waiting for the user to press a key, the program also repeatedly compares the current time, in line 380, with the time for which the alarm is set.

Once a key is pressed, the program looks to see that only one of the valid key choices has been entered. If a lowercase letter has been pressed (i.e., C>96), then it is converted to uppercase. The key depressed is used to send control to one of the subroutines that carry out the desired function.

```
D.) RUN Basic program
0.) DIR :0
                              E.) Load Basic program
1.) DIR :1
2.) DIR :2
                              F.) Go to Basic
                              G.) Go to DOS
3.) DIR :3
4.) Copy a disk
                              H.) FREE
                              I.) Purge disk
5.) Word Processing
                              J.) Format disk :1
6.) Communications
                              K.) Format disk :0
7.) Run Spelling Checker
                              L.) Change name of disk
8.) Change name of file
9.) Copy file from :0 to :1
                              M.) Change SYSTEM
A.) Process a file for Comm
                              N.) Change DRIVES
B.) Turn computer clock off
                              O.) Turn clock on
                              P.) Reboot System
C.) KILL a file from a disk
             ENTER CHOICE :
                              =====>
```

Fig. 12-1. Sample screen from Menu Master.

| A\$ \$ \$ \$ \$ \$ \$ \$ \$ \$ \$ \$ \$ \$ \$ \$ \$ \$ \$ | Used in INKEY\$ loop. Used in INKEY\$ loop. Used with CMD to carry out function. Value of user choice. Changes to SYSTEM or PDRIVE. User choice. Name of user text processor. Name of user communications program. Drive number. Used with CMD to carry out function. Position to POKE cursor. Loop counter. Name of file to be changed. New name of the file. Name of program. Used with CMD to carry out function. Name of user spelling checker. Time now. |
|---|---|
|   | Name of user spelling checker.  |
| TU\$  | Time now.<br>Time up.   |
| WP\$  | Name of user word processing program.   |
|   |   |

Fig. 12-2. Variables used in Menu Master.

The rest of the program consists of modules to do the task requested. In many cases the chore is a DOS function that, with NEWDOS/80, is achieved by assembling a string, such as R\$, containing the command. For example, if the user presses zero, R\$ will equal "DIR:0". A simple CMD R\$ line will implement the DIR command. Other operating systems may use SYSTEM, or some variation to do this task. (Hint: use Global Replacer to make this change if you discover it after the program has been keyed in.)

The clock routine beginning at line 1000 required the most programming. The user is asked what time he or she wishes to be alerted, and the current time. The time is set, and TU\$ given the value of the time for which the alarm is set.

You could probably squeeze in more than 13 menu choices. Model 4 computers, with 24 available screen lines should top out at 48 possibilities. Three columns of choices could up that to 72. You might be hard pressed to find enough unique keys, and could have to resort to upper and lowercase menu labels. But do you really think you could come up with 72 different things for your computer to do? Many of us don't even own that many programs.

```
IF TU$<>""PRINT @ 111," * SET ";TU$;":00"
PRINT
                                                                                                                                                                            80 WP$="Name of Your Word Processing System"
90 CO$="Name of Your Communications Program"
                                                                                                                                                                                                                  SPELL$="Name of your Spelling Checker"
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                CM$="Name of your Text processor"
ON ERROR GOTO 1760
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            * *** Display Menu ***
                                                                                                                                            *** Parameters ***
如果我就你你你你你你你你你你你
                                   * Menu Master
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                               CLS:PRINT
                                                                                         CLEAR 1000
                                                                                                         DEFINT A-Z
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     I=1003
C1=131
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             145
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                150
160
                                                                                                                                             73
```

```
Run Spelling Checker"; TAB(30)"K.) Format disk: 0"
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       PRINT "B.) Turn computer clock off"; TAB(30)"0.) Turn clock
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       Change name of file"; TAB(30)"L.) Change name of
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         300 PRINT "C.) KILL a file from a disk"; TAB(30) "P.) Reboot
                                                                                                                                                                     PRINT"5.) Word Frocessing"; TAB(30)"I.) Purge disk"
PRINT"6.) Communications"; TAB(30)"J.) Format disk :1"
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       270 PRINT"9.) Copy file from :0 to :1"; TAB(30)"M.) Change
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         280 PRINT"A.) Process a file for Comm"; TAB(30)"N.) Change
PRINT "1.) DIR :0"; TAB(30)"D.) RUN Basic program" PRINT "1.) DIR :1"; TAB(30)"E.) Load Basic program"
                                                                   PRINT"2.) DIR :2";TAB(30)"F.) Go to Basic"
PRINT"3.) DIR :3";TAB(30);"G.) Go to DOS"
                                                                                                                                       PRINT "4.) Copy a disk"; TAB(30)"H.) FREE"
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                               , "<=====
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                           PRINTTAB(12)" ENTER CHOICE:
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         PRINT"8.)
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       PRINT"7.)
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             PRINT
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         SYSTEM"
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         DRIVES"
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             System"
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         disk"
```

Fig. 12-3. Program listing for Menu Master.

POKE 15360+I,Cl

CH\$=INKEY\$

```
1140,1140,1140,1140,1140,480,680,690,700,710,830,930,940,1210,1360,133
0,1350,540,550,610,1380,1420,1660,1460,1560,950,920
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                sure disk to be copied is in lower drive"
                                                                                                                                                                      IF C>47 AND C<59 GOTO 420 ELSE GOTO 430
                                                                                    *** Check to see if time is up ***
                                                                                                           IF MID$(TIME$,10,5)=TU$ GOTO 1080
IF CH$="" GOTO 330
                                                                                                                                                                                               CH=C-47:GOTO 470

IF C<65 OR C>112 GOTO 330

IF C>80 AND C<97 GOTO 330

IF C>96 THEN CH=C-86:GOTO 470

CH=C-54
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 475 *** Execute Commands ***
                   POKE 15360+I,32
FOR N=1 TO 20:NEXT N
FOR N=1 TO 20:NEXT
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    PRINT" Make
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            470 ON CH GOTO
                                                                                                                                                        C=ASC(CH$)
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             480 CLS:PRINT
                                                                                                                                                                                                   4420
4430
650
000
000
000
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    490
```

```
PRINT"Put blank disk to be copied to in upper drive"
                                                                                                                                       PRINTTAB(12)"== Hit any key to continue =="A$=INKEY$:IF A$="" GOTO 590
                PRINT:PRINT"Hit any key when ready"
A$=INKEY$:IF A$="" GOTO 520
                                                                                                                                                                                                            PRINT"Which drive to purge (0-3)
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                CMD"s=copy :0 :1, fmt
R$="S="+WP$:CMD R$
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   R$
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                R$="S="+SPELL$:CMD
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                R$="S="+CO$:CMD R$
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             R$="PURGE :"+D$
                                                                                                                                                                                           CLS:PRINT:PRINT
                                                                                                                      PRINT: PRINT
                                                                                     CLS:PRINT
                                                                                                       CMD"FREE"
                                                                                                                                                                                                                           INPUT D$
                                                                    CMD"S"
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             CMD R$
                                                                                                                                                                                                        620
                                                                                                                                       580
590
                                                                                                                                                                                          019
```

Fig. 12-3. Program listing for Menu Master. (Continued from page 143.)

CLS: PRINT

```
860 LINEINPUT" Enter name of file in Drive 0 to be copied to
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                          870 LINEINPUT"Enter new name, or hit ENTER to keep old name
                                                                                                                                                                                                                LINEINPUT"Enter name of file to be changed?";Nl$
PRINT"Do you want to check directory first?" A$=INKEY$:IF A$="" GOTO 740
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             PRINT"Copy file from Drive 0 to Drive 1" GOSUB 730
                                                        IF A$="Y" OR A$="Y" GOTO 760 ELSE RETURN
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            B$="rename "+N1$+" "+N2$;CMD B$:RUN
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                              R$="copy "+N1$+":0 to "+N2$+":1"
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                           LINEINPUT"Enter new name :";N2$
                                                                                         PRINT"Which directory (0-3)?"
A$=INKEY$:IF A$="" GOTO 770
                                                                                                                                                       R$="dir :"+A$:CMD R$:RETURN
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      880 IF N2$="" THEN N2$=N1$
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                CMD"S-BOOT"
                                                                                                                                                                                   GOSUB 730
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                              Drive 1 " ,N1$
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         CLS:PRINT
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  CMD R$
```

```
LINEINPUT"WHAT TIME DO YOU WANT TO BE ALERTED?
                                                                                                                                               $NI
                                                       PRINT "DO YOU WANT TO SET AN ALARM?"
                                                                                                                                IF VAL(TU$)<10 THEN TU$="0"+TU$
                                                                                                                                                           IF VAL(TN$)<10 THEN TN$="0"+TN$
                                                                                                                                             IS IT NOW?
                                                                                    IF LEFT$ (AN$,1) <>"Y" GOTO 150
                                                                     AN$=INKEY$:IF AN$="" GOTO 980
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                               PRINT STRING$ (191,64)
            CMD"CLOCK, N":GOTO 150
                                                                                                                                                                         G$="TIME,"+TN$+":00"
                                                                                                                                              TIME
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 PRINT "NOW !!!"
                                                                                                                                             LINEINPUT"WHAT
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    PRINT CHR$(23)
                          CMD"CLOCK"
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             GOTO 1080
                                          CLS:PRINT
                                                                                                                                                                                                       GOTO 150
RUN CMS
                                                                                                                                                                                        CMD G$
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                           1120
                                                                                                                                            1030
                                                                                                   1000
                                                                                                                                                                         1050
                                                                                                                                                                                                                     1080
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   1090
                                                                                                                                                           1040
                                                                                                                                                                                       1060
                                                                      086
                                                                                    066
```

Fig. 12-3. Program listing for Menu Master. (Continued from page 145.)

IF INKEY\$="" GOTO 1130

:"+CH\$

CLS:G\$="DIR

```
RUN
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  BE
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    BE
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                          1310 CMD R$
1320 RUN
1330 CLS:PRINT:PRINT:LINEINPUT "ENTER NAME OF PROGRAM TO
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   PROGRAM TO
                                                                                                                                      LINEINPUT"Enter name of program to be killed ";N1$ PRINT"Which drive is it on (Hit ENTER for any)" A$=INKEY$:IF A$="" GOTO 1260
                 -- HIT ANY KEY TO CONTINUE --"
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   "ENTER NAME OF
                                                                                                                                                                                          IF A$=CHR$(13) THEN A$="":GOTO 1290
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 1360 CLS:PRINT:PRINT:LINEINPUT
                                 GOTO 1180
                                                                                                                                                                                                        A$=":"+A$
R$="KILL "+N1$+A$
                                                                  CLS:PRINT:PRINT
                PRINTTAB(15)
                                 IF INKEY$=""
PRINT: PRINT
                                                                                                      GOSUB 730
                                                                                    CLS:PRINT
                                                  GOTO 150
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                               LOADED : "; PR$
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 1340 LOAD PR$
1350 NEW
                                                                                                                       PRINT
                                                                                                                                                                                                          1280
1290
                                                                                                                                      1240
1250
1260
```

```
PRINT"Which drive to change SYSTEM"
                                                                                                                          PRINT: PRINT" ENTER CHANGES :"
                                                                                                                                           R$=R$+CHR$ (32)+CG$
                                                                                                        R$="SYSTEM :"+D$
        CLS:PRINT:PRINT
R$="FORMAT :1"
                                                                              CLS:PRINT:PRINT
                                                                                                                                                                      CLS:PRINT:PRINT
                                                    R$="FORMAT :0"
                                                                                                                                  LINEINPUT CG$
                                                                                               INPUT D$
RUN PR$
                          R$
                                                                                                                 CMD R$
                                                                                                                                                     CMD R$
                          CMD
                                                             CMD
                                                                      RUN
                                   RUN
                                                                                                                                                             1550
1560
1370
1380
1380
1400
1410
1420
1430
                                                                     1450
1460
1470
                                                                                                        1490
1500
1510
1520
1530
1540
                                                                                               1480
```

Fig. 12-3. Program listing for Menu Master. (Continued from page 147.)

PRINT"Which drive to change

|--|

Fig. 12-3. Program listing for Menu Master. (Continued from page 149.)



## Lister

Lister combines some of the features of programs introduced previously. Like many of them, it loads a program and looks at each line. Then it examines the contents and performs some small trick that we programmers will find of value. In this case, it will format program listings into paged, neater groups.

The program asks the user to enter the name of the file to be listed on the line printer. The page width in columns is entered, along with the number of lines per page. Then, the file is opened and a line input into A\$.

Then the program enters a FOR-NEXT loop that begins 10 characters to the left of the desired column width. That is, if 50 columns are desired, the program starts checking a line to be listed at the 40th character. This is considered the "hot" zone, where the program begins looking for either a colon or a space. When one is found, it splits the target program line at the colon or space and LPRINTS the two parts, with some spaces added to indent the second portion of the line past the line number above. The counter for the number of lines printed so far, LL, is also incremented. Whenever LL is greater than the desired number of lines per page, a new page is started, with an appropriate heading.

Note: because some computer setups hang up when attempts are made to LLIST without a printer being switched on or connected, leave the REMs in place while typing and debugging Lister. When everything is working fine, remove them and your listing will

```
10 • **********
20 '
30 " *
         Word Counter
40 *
     ****
50 '
60 CLEAR 4000
70 DEFINT A-Z
80 CLS:PRINT:PRINT
90 PRINT TAB(21) "Writer's Word Counter
100 PRINT
110 PRINT TAB(6) "This program will
     count the number of actual words
     in a
120 PRINT TAB(2) "text file, or any
     file that has been stored to disk
     in ASCII "
130 PRINT TAB(2) "format. In addition,
     it also provides the total number
     of "
140 PRINT TAB(2)"'standard ' five
     character words, and the average
     character "
150 PRINT TAB(2) "length of the words
     in the text.
160 PRINT: PRINT TAB(17)"== Hit any
     key to continue == ™
170 IF INKEY$="" GOTO 170
180 CLS:PRINT:PRINT: *** Access
     Disk File ***
```

Fig. 13-1. Example of listing producer by Lister.

| A\$<br>C\$<br>COL\$<br>L\$<br>LL<br>N<br>P | Stores program line being listed. Used in INKEY\$ loop. Width of printout. Name of file to be listed. Lines listed. Loop counter. Page number. Lines per page. |
|--|--|
| R\$  | Middle string of line being listed.  |

Fig. 13-2. Variables used in Lister.

go to the printer as well as to the screen. Figure 13-1 shows an example of another program in this book that has been LLISTed using Lister; variables and the listing are shown in Figs. 13-2 and 13-3.

```
PRINTTAB(16)"Enter name of file to be listed:"
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  PRINTTAB(20)"How many lines per page?" INPUT PG$
                                                                                                                                                                                                 PRINTTAB(21)"How many columns wide?"
                                                                                                                 京京市
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       175 ° *** Open Disk File ***
                                                                                                                  *** Enter Parameters
                                                                                                                                                 CLS:PRINT:PRINT
                                                                                                                                                                                                                   INPUT COL$
COL=VAL(COL$)
                                                               各京本部部部部部部部部
學學學學學學學學學學
                                                                                                                                                                                 90 LINEINPUT L$
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      PG=VAL(PG$)
                                Lister
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      GOSUB 410
                                                                                CLEAR 1000
                                                                                                                                                   80
                                                                                                                   65
```

```
PRINT STRING$(5,32);:'lprint string$(5,32); A$=MID$(A$,N+1)
                                                     *** Look For Space or Colon ***
                                                                                                         R$=MID$(A$,N,1)
IF R$=CHR$(32) GOTO 290
IF R$=":" GOTO 290
                                                                                                                                                                                                     PRINT L$:'lprint 1$:11=11+1
                                                                                              FOR N=COL-10 TO COL
                                                                                                                                                                PRINT A$: 'lprint a$
OPEN "I",1,L$
IF EOF(1) GOTO 350
IF LL>PG GOSUB 410
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             IF A$="" GOTO190
                                                                              LINEINPUT#1, A$
                                                                                                                                                                                         L$=LEFT$ (A$,N)
                                                                                                                                                 NEXT N
                                                                                                                                                                           GOTO 190
 180
190
200
                                                     205
                                                                                            220
230
240
250
260
270
                                                                                                                                                                           280
                                                                                                                                                                                         290
```

Fig. 13-3. Listing of Lister.

GOTO 220

```
PRINT:PRINT:PRINT"Please insert another page."
                                                                                                                      IF A$="Y" OR A$="Y" THEN RUN ELSE END
                                                      PRINTTAB(23)"List another file?"
PRINTTAB(29)"(Y/N)"
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    C$=INKEY$:IF C$="" GOTO 430
'lprint 1$;" Listing Page ";P
                                                                                                                                                                                                    "LPRINT:LPRINT:LPRINT:LPRINT
                                                                                              A$=INKEY$:IF A$="" GOTO 390
1 *** Do it again ? ***
                                                                                                                                                              1 *** Page Routine ***
                                        PRINT: PRINT
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                           RETURN
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       P=P+1
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      LL=0
   355
                                                                                                                                                                 405
```

Fig. 13-3. Listing of Lister. (Continued from page 155.)



## **Error Trapper**

Error Trapper is dedicated to all of you who have written programs containing a bug or two. Our handy BASIC interpreters are nice enough to point them out to us at runtime. It would have been handy to have the syntax errors (at least) brought to our attention when the program line was first entered. But no, the computer is not that accommodating. It reserves judgment until we actually try to run the program.

Most amateur programs—and darned few professional BASIC programs—take advantage of the error trapping possibilities of the TRS-80. The machine not only tells us that there is an error, but in many cases it will point out exactly what type of error has been made. A clever code number is supplied, which can be manipulated by the program. In many cases some routine could be written to recover from the error. Or, in other cases, the error number could be used to supply the user-operator with some hint of what he or she has done wrong.

For example, a friendly prompt would be nice, something on the order of, "Program tried to divide by zero. Are you sure all the amounts you entered are correct?" Admittedly, many programmers don't understand enough about errors to do anything about them.

That's where Error Trapper comes in. Unlike Level II BASIC, Disk BASIC provides nice long error messages. Instead of "NF Error" we get NEXT WITHOUT FOR, which is much clearer. However, some of the more esoteric error messages may puzzle

```
10110 ON EC GOSUB
10120,10180,10220,10280,10340,10440,10520,10590,10680,10780,10870
,10940,10970,11030,11110,11180,11240,11290,11320,11360,11380,1144
0,11480,11530,11560,11590,11660,11700,11360,11360,11770,11360,113
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             PRINT:PRINT"Program got to NEXT without encountering FOR
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                           Also, did you type GOTO
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  60,11360,11800,11830,11910,11940,11360,12020,120
                                                                                      我们的我们的是我们的的,我们们的一个的,我们们的一个的,我们们们的一个的,我们们们的一个的,我们们们的一个的,我们们们们的一个的,我们们们们的一个的,我们们们们
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                          PRINT"Check for incorrect GOTO.
                                           Error Trapper
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         10120 PRINT "Next without For"
                                                                                                                                                                                                                        IF EC>23 THEN EC=EC-27
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     PRINT"COMMAND mode?"
                                                                                                                                                     ON ERROR GOTO 10080
                                                                                                                                                                             EC=ERR/2+1
                                                                                                                                 CLS:PRINT
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             PRINT
                                                                                                                                                                                                 CLS
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   first"
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                          10140
                                                                                   10040
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   10150
                                                                                                                                 10060
                                                                                                                                                     10070
                                                                                                                                                                                                                       10100
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                          10160
10000
                      10010
                                                                10030
                                                                                                          10050
                                                                                                                                                                          10080
                                                                                                                                                                                                   10090
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                               from"
```

"Check for misspelled keywords, missing parentheses "available. Check Data lines to be sure that none" "were left out by mistake. FOR-NEXT loop may also" PRINT "Program was asked to Read more data items than "Check program lines immediately prior to this 10250 PRINT "to make sure program control does not allow items in Data. 10230 PRINT "Program may have gotten to a subroutine 10200 PRINT "as well as bad punctuation." 10260 PRINT "into the following module." PRINT "were left out by mistake. PRINT "be too large for number of 10220 PRINT "Return Without Gosub" PRINT"Syntax error" PRINT "Out of Data" 10210 GOTO 12190 10170 GOTO 12190 GOTO 12190 improperly." 10240 PRINT 10190 PRINT PRINT subroutine" or quotes" running" 10300

Fig. 14-1. Program listing for Error Trapper.

```
.
W
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                              10460 PRINT "this will occur if the number is larger than 32767"
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      "single or double precision numbers can only be in
                                                                                                                                                                                  10370 PRINT "program line. One will probably be a value that
                                                                                                           10360 PRINT "parameter. Print the values of the variables in
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                          Or, in the case
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                          10380 PRINT "unsuited for one of the functions of that line."
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  PRINT "For example, you might have PEEK(N) in the line,
                                   10350 PRINT "Program tried to perform an operation using an
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   10410 PRINT "PRINT CHR$(N) that, through some error in the
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                By changing
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      10450 PRINT "A number is too large. If a variable is
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                              program,"
10420 PRINT "N equals 256, or a larger number."
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            10400 PRINT "discover than N equals 70,000.
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             10480 PRINT "of about 1.7E+ (or minus) 38.
10340 PRINT "Illegal Function Call"
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  10440 PRINT "Overflow"
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                               10430 GOTO 12190
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                the range"
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 integer, "
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      10390
```

PRINT "if possible. Improperly nested branching routines" PRINT "(10 GOSUB 10, in the worst possible case) can also PRINT "Most likely, your program uses up too much memory PRINT "because of very large arrays. Cut down on array 10490 PRINT "from integer to single or double precision, most 10500 PRINT "overflow errors will be avoided." 10600 PRINT "You typed a GOTO or GOSUB line, without entering 10610 PRINT"the line where control was directed. Or, in It is a good 10620 PRINT "you killed a program section without the corresponding" 10630 PRINT "line which called that section. PRINT "cause this, but rarely." PRINT "Undefined line" PRINT "Out of Memory" GOTO 12190 GOTO 12190 variable " editing," 10550

Fig. 14-1. Program listing for Error Trapper. (Continued from page 159.)

PRINT" program line is called from elsewhere in a program"

10640 PRINT "to use a cross-reference utility to find out if a"

```
command
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        10730 PRINT "spelled the array name differently in the program
                                                                                               PRINT "Program tried to use an array element larger than
                                                                                                                                                                                                                           10710 PRINT "in the affected program line. If it is 11, you
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            10800 PRINT "they are not likely to be encountered more than
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                           10720 PRINT "have forgotten to DIMension that array, or you
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                           PRINT "Place DIM statements at beginning of program,
                                                                                                                                                            10700 PRINT "DIMensioned. Print out current value of the
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                          10810 PRINT "If a program will be repeated, use the RUN
                                                              PRINT "Subscript Out of Range"
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            10780 PRINT "Redimensioned Array"
PRINT "before killing it."
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            PRINT "10 DIM ST$(20)"
PRINT "20 S2$(12)=A$"
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                              10740 PRINT "For example:"
                           GOTO 12190
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            GOTO 12190
                                                                                                                                                                                               subscript"
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                              10750
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                           line."
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             havem
```

10820 PRINT" or make sure the GOTO directs control AFTER the DIM PRINT "(as in DIM A\$(N)), make sure that the variable has 10830 PRINT "If an array is being DIMensioned with a variable," 10900 PRINT"to make sure it is not spelled incorrectly or that 10880 PRINT "Program error has produced a zero value in a variable" Check PRINT "assigned a value earlier in the program" 10890 PRINT"that is used in a division operation. PRINT"Division by Zero" GOTO 12190 statement." variable" 10860 been"

Find out why it

10910 PRINT"wrong variable is not being used.

PRINT"zero when a value was expected." GOTO 12190

PRINT"Illegal direct"

10950 PRINT

10960 GOTO 12190

"The INPUT command cannot be used as a direct

Fig. 14-1. Program listing for Error Trapper. (Continued from page 161.)

- 11000 PRINT "In most cases, these are caused by forgetting to A\$=A, or 10980 PRINT "Program tried to assign a string value to a For example: 10990 PRINT "variable or vice versa. 10970 PRINT"Type Mismatch" A=CHR\$(N)." numericm
  - 11010 PRINT "the \$ in a string variable or array." include"
    - 11020 GOTO 12190 11030 PRINT "Out of String Space"
- PRINT "Larger CLEAR statement needed. If none written,"
- PRINT "the system allocates only 50 bytes. You may need
- 11060 PRINT "to add a line reading CLEAR 500, or more,
- depending" 11070 PRINT "on how much string space is consumed." 11080 PRINT"Model 4 mode dynamically allocates string space ---
  - 11090 PRINT" you will not encounter this error message. " 11100 GOTO 12190
    - 11110 PRINT"String Too Long"
- 11120 PRINT"String variables and array elements can only be 255

```
11150 PRINT "mode. The find why attempt was made to make this"
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            11220 PRINT "Never get all the parentheses in the right places,
11130 PRINT "long. Take string variables in program line, and 11140 PRINT "find length by typing PRINT LEN(variable$) in
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             11240 PRINT "Can't Continue"
11250 PRINT "Either you typed CONT after program had ended, or
11260 PRINT "a program line was edited (thus ending the
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    11210 PRINT "Break operations down into several components.will"
                                                                                                                                                                    PRINT "String Formula Too Complex"
PRINT "Avoid such complex formulae as:"
PRINT " A$=(LEFT$(MID$(A$,INSTR(B$,C$),LEN(A$))-1,)
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                              11270 PRINT "You must start the RUN over."
                                                                                                               PRINT "string that long."
                                                                                                                                            GOTO 12190
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             anyway."
11230 GOTO 12190
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            11280 GOTO 12190
                                                                                                                                         11170 GOTO 12
11180 PRINT "
11190 PRINT "
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      program)."
                                                          command"
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                          LEN(A$)
```

Fig. 14-1. Program listing for Error Trapper. (Continued from page 163.)

PRINT "No Resume"

```
the necessary
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             Common example:"
                                                                    Place early in program.
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        PRINT "If not using Disk Basic, check commands to see
                                                bypassed the necessary
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   PRINT "Data input from outside source, such as"
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       PRINT "tape was incorrect or in wrong sequence.
PRINT "Program ended during error trapping."
                                                                                                                                                          PRINT "Program neglected to include one of
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                              11500 PRINT "incorrect command was entered.
                                                      PRINT "You forgot, deleted, or
                                                                       PRINT "ON ERROR GOTO message.
                                 PRINT"Resume Without Error"
                                                                                                         PRINT"Unprintable error"
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                           PRINT"Disk Basic Only"
                                                                                                                                           PRINT"Missing Operand"
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     PRINT"Bad file data"
                                                                                                                                                                                                                PRINT "A$=LEFT$(A$)"
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   PRINT "POKE 15360 "
                                                                                                                                                                                                11400 PRINT "Examples:"
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                          GOTO 12190
                                                                                         GOTO 12190
                                                                                                                         GOTO 12190
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     GOTO 12190
                    GOTO 12190
                                                                                                                                                                                 operands."
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   11420
11430
11440
11450
11470
11480
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  where"
                                                                                                                            11370
                                                                                                                                                                                                                    11410
                                                                                                                                                                 11390
```

```
PRINT "File buffer number that has not been assigned with
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       PRINT "Note that PRINT #1 should have been used instead."
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         PRINT "File by that name not on disks currently in
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      PRINT "OPEN statement was used. Example:"
PRINT "10 OPEN "; CHR$(34); "O"; CHR$(34); ",1,F$"
PRINT "20 PRINT #2,A$"
                                                                                                                                                                                                     Disk operating system goofed."
                                                                                          đ
                                                                              PRINT "More than 255 byes were allocated to
PRINT "INPUT #1, where INPUT #-1 is meant."
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      PRINT "Bad File Number"
                                                                                                                                                                    PRINT"Internal error"
                                                      PRINT"Field Overflow"
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                               PRINT"File Not Found"
                                                                                                                 random-access buffer."
                                                                                                                                                                                              PRINT "Whoops.
                         GOTO 12190
                                                                                                                                      11550 GOTO 12190
                                                                                                                                                                                                                           GOTO 12190
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    GOTO 12190
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    drive(s)."
```

Fig. 14-1. Program listing for Error Trapper. (Continued from page 165.)

11680 PRINT "Or, you spelled filename wrong." 11690 GOTO 12190

```
PRINT "You tried to write to a buffer that had been opened
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                          PRINT "Program tried to load more data from disk than was"
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            FOR-NEXT LOOP
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         11880 PRINT "for the end of the file, and send control to the
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 11860 PRINT "is too large. With sequential files that grow,
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            11870 PRINT " an IF EOF(file buffer) GOTO xxx statement can
                                                                                                             PRINT "10 OPEN "; CHR$(34); "O"; CHR$(34); ", 1, F$"
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             PRINT "Available. Check for empty file, or
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       PRINT "Insert new disk, or kill files."
                                                                                    PRINT "input, or vice versa. Example:"
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   PRINT "OOOPS! Another computer error."
                                                                                                                                                                          PRINT "Change the O to I"
                                                                                                                                                 PRINT "20 PRINT #1, A$"
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      PRINT"Disk I/O error"
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    PRINT" Input Past End"
PRINT"Bad File Mode"
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            PRINT"Disk Full"
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  GOTO 12190
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       GOTO 12190
                                                                                                                                                                                                            GOTO 12190
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         adding"
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      check™
```

```
PRINT "Record number in a PUT statement larger than 1,340"
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         for file
                                                                                                                                                             "Filename not legal. Must conform to all rules for
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     11970 PRINT "longer than eight characters, nor extension longer"
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       PRINT "You cannot load, run, or merge a disk file that is
                                                                                                                                                                                                                   That is, cannot
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       If variable being used
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        "check to make sure illegal value not being
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  assigned."
12000 PRINT "Error traps can be made to check for name
                                                                                                                                                                                                                 11960 PRINT "programs or files in Disk Basic.
PRINT "module in an orderly manner."
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                          PRINT"Direct Statement In File"
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    PRINT "longer than three.
                                                     PRINT"Bad Record Number"
                                                                                                                                 PRINT"Bad Filename"
                         GOTO 12190
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   legality."
12010 GOTO 12190
                                                                                                         GOTO 12190
                                                                                                                                                       11950 PRINT
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        11990 PRINT
                                                                                                                                                                                         naming"
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    11980
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                              name"
```

Fig. 14-1. Program listing for Error Trapper. (Continued from page 167.)

Fig. 14-1. Program listing for Error Trapper. (Continued from page 169.)

the best of us. Do you really know what sort of mistake will trigger an ILLEGAL DIRECT message?

This program, when appended to your own program, will spell it out for you. It provides *really long* error messages which, instead of just telling you how you goofed, will suggest situations that might have produced the error and places to check for the bug.

For example, if you see OUT OF DATA you know that the computer would like more data items. Error Trapper suggests that perhaps several data items were left out by mistake, or that the FOR-NEXT loop which reads the data is too large. ILLEGAL FUNCTION CALL suggests that the programmer list the offending line, and print out from command mode some of the values of the variables. Perhaps, it says, a number larger than 32767 was PEEKed, or you attempted to PRINT CHR\$(256).

Little understood is how the TRS-80 manages to do something about errors. The secret is in line 10070, which is an ON ERROR GOTO command that summons the computer's interrupt routine. Interrupts are different than normal statements. If a program line says IF INKEY\$="" GOTO, it will act on that *only* at the exact moment that the line is interpreted by BASIC. In order to make INKEY\$ work, we have to loop back, over and over, until something happens.

However, once ON ERROR has been activated, the computer can go on to other things. The program can perform all sorts of different functions, and the interrupt routine will remain dormant . . . until an error occurs. Then it will obey the command and send control to the line previously specified.

You can't even turn off the interrupt routine by exiting the program. Run Error Trapper and hit Break at some point. Then, trigger an error by typing in a syntax error or some other goof from command mode. Oops! The program is running again, and you are at line 10080. You didn't even type RUN. That is the interrupt routine at work.

Once an error has taken place, Error Trapper looks to see what kind of error it is. An error deposits a value in the reserved variable ERR. Dividing ERR by two and then adding one, we come up with a number that relates to the error code; the same error always produces the same unique number. We use that number in this program in an ON...GOSUB line that directs control to the appropriate error message. In a real program you might substitute for the message, some type of error trap or perhaps a routine that corrects the error.

For example, if the error were FILE NOT FOUND, you might write a routine that asks the user to check the filename, or deposit the correct disk in the drive. Then it would ask again for the filename. Using RESUME followed by a line number, control can be returned to the main body of the program.

If you append Error Trapper to your own programs, you will want to move the ON ERROR line higher in the program, so it will be activated BEFORE the main body of the program is run. Error Trapper is listed in Fig. 14-1.



## **Chain Zapper**

Chain Zapper is aimed squarely at NEWDOS/80 users, but the idea behind it can also be adapted by users of other operating systems. To find out whether or not you qualify, ask yourself the following question: Do you flinch every time you open an envelope containing those familiar blue pages full of mandatory ZAPs for your favorite disk operating system? The ones that inform you that you must type in the following 47 bytes, plus half of SYS6/SYS, in order to avoid a horrible problem that may crop up if more than seventeen directory entries begin with the letter Q?

Those who faithfully apply ZAPs to their NEWDOS/80 operating system, or to programs in order to make them compatible with DOS, can now rely on their computer to take a good 50 percent of the drudgery out of this patching. Chain Zapper is a program which will create a custom chain file to do this chore.

Why not simply type in the ZAPs by hand, if they still must (obviously) be entered into some other utility program. There are a number of very good reasons. First, using Chain Zapper, you have only to type the filename to be zapped, the relative sector, first byte, and the actual ZAPs. This procedure can be repeated for any number of desired ZAPs in one session. More importantly, you can LOAD this chain file at any time, and proofread the patches you have typed in *before* the dirty work is done on the disk.

The real time savings come in applying the patches. The chain file created by Chain Zapper is activated merely by the normal CHAIN command. If you have called up your ZAP file, NEWZAP, type CHAIN NEWZAP, ZAP (or DO NEWZAP, ZAP if using NEWDOS/80 2.0). In this case, ZAP is the section ID automatically tagged onto the file by Chain Zapper.

The chain file will load SUPERZAP, invoke DFS (display file's sectors), enter the correct sector—plus MOD, the starting byte, all the ZAPS, <ENTER> to finish the patching, and answer "Y" to the "Okay to write modification to disk?" prompt.

Then the chain file will return control to the main SUPERZAP menu and, if additional ZAPs have been included in the file, go on and patch the next, and the next. If all the disks containing the affected files are already loaded in the correct drives, the process can be amazingly fast. The CRT screen flashes almost quicker than the eye can follow.

In fact, the patching is so quick that it is a viable replacement for copying sectors to update all your disks. Once you have ascertained that a ZAP is correct (by proofreading before running the chain file), and have run one version a few times to make sure that everything seems to be okay, simply put other disks in drives and ZAP them all automatically. You may want to save an unaltered version, just in case. This is a technical term called "good data processing practice," or in layman's language, "covering your backside."

While Chain Zapper will save an individual much time, it has even more extensive application among user groups and computer clubs. One person can create the file and share it with all other members who are using NEWDOS/80. Copying disk sectors which have been ZAPped is time-consuming, because different file relative sectors may be in different locations on disks. But the Chain Zapper file doesn't care where the program to be patched starts on the disk. It invokes "DFS" for each file and relies on SUPERZAP to find the correct location. Once one member has written the chain file, it may be freely distributed for all to use.

This marvel of automation also makes it possible to goof on a truly mammoth scale. Be careful when entering ZAPs.

There are several modifications you may wish to make. By substituting OPEN "E" for OPEN "O" in line 180, and replacing the default "ZAP" section ID with a string variable that can be input with an ID name by the user, one chain file can serve a continuing series of ZAPS. When you receive your new patches, they can be added onto the end of the existing ZAP chain file. OPEN "E" opens a sequential file without resetting the EOF marker to zero, so the

new information is tacked onto the end. To invoke a specific set of patches, you'll have to use the appropriate section ID in place of the ZAP ID supplied with the unaltered program.

The program described in Figs. 15-1 and 15-2, makes use of no special routines. Some of the chain commands, such as SUPER-ZAP, DFS, and MOD, are built in, and are automatically written to the chain file with no user intervention. Other items, such as filespec, first byte to modify, and the actual ZAPs, must be supplied by the user. Apparat already formats all patches in filename, file relative sector, relative byte, new bytes order.

Patches may be entered as one long string, up to 255 characters in length. One space, and one only, must be entered between bytes. If you forget to space at the end of the patch, one will be added. The program looks for these spaces, using INSTR, to divide the ZAP into separate bytes. The bytes themselves are further parsed into nybbles and written to the chain file. Individual patches longer than 255 characters should be treated as two (or more) separate ZAPs. Following each patch, the program will ask if the user wishes to do another. If so, the input and disk write routines are repeated (except for the initial lines which invoke SUPERZAP).

The EDIT mode has purposely been kept fairly primitive, in order to discourage extensive use. You should be very careful when entering the original ZAPS. They are all displayed on the screen, so check them out before you hit ENTER. If a change must be made, however, the user may specify the chain zapping file to be edited, and type in the name of the affected program or other file. Chain Zapper will then search through the chain file, and stop at the *first* 

| A\$    | Used in INKEY\$ loop.                         |
|--------|---|
| Ε      | Counter for name of file being edited.        |
| F\$(n) | File being edited.                            |
| F3\$   | Name of file to which ZAPs are being applied. |
| FI\$   | Name of output file.                          |
| G\$    | New value.                                    |
| HEX\$  | Hex values.                                   |
| I\$    | Used in INKEY\$ loop.                         |
| N, N2  | Loop counters.                                |

Fig. 15-1. Variables used in Chain Zapper.

```
LINEINPUT"Enter name of ZAP file. Extension /JCL will be added automatically :";FI$
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       PRINTTAB(10)"2.) EDIT existing ZAP file"
                                                                                                                                                                                                               90 PRINT "Would you like to :"
100 PRINTTAB(10)"1.) Create new ZAP file"
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 * ***** CREATE ZAP CHAIN FILE *****
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                           A=VAL(A$):IF A<1 OR A>2 GOTO 140
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 PRINTTAB(6)"-- ENTER CHOICE --"
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      A$=INKEY$:IF A$="" GOTO 140
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 ON A GOTO 170,540
                                                                                  · 南部公司北京大学大学大学大学大学大学
* Chain Zapper
*
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             CLS:PRINT:PRINT
                                                                                                                                                                                             80 CLS:PRINT:PRINT
                                                                                                                                                             1 *** Menu ***
                                                                                                         CLEAR 10000
                                                                                                                             DIM F$(500)
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                               PRINT
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 165
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  160
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        140
                                                                                                                                                              75
```

```
INPUT "Enter new hex values. Space between each byte"; HEX$
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      RIGHT$(HEX$,1)<>CHR$(32) THEN HEX$=HEX$+CHR$(32)
                                                                                                                                                                                             INPUT "Enter file relative sector :";F$
                                                                                                                              LINEINPUT "Enter filespec to be ZAPPED (You may include drive) :";F$
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                           INPUT"Enter first byte to modify :";F$
IF RIGHT$(FI$,4)="/JCL" GOTO 210
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                           #1, RIGHT$(F$,1)+CHR$(131)
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      PRINT #1, LEFT$(F$,1)+CHR$(131)
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                           STEP
                                                                                                                                                                                                                   F<0 GOTO 270
                                         OPEN "O",1,FI$
PRINT #1,CHR$(128)+"ZAP"
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                           N=1 TO LEN(HEX$)
                                                                                                                                                                                                                 F=VAL(F$):IF F<0 GOTO 2

PRINT #1,F$

PRINT #1,"M"+CHR$(131)

PRINT #1,"O"+CHR$(131)

PRINT #1,"O"+CHR$(131)
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                IF LEN(F$)<>2 GOTO 330
                                                                                    #1,"SUPERZAP"
                                                                                                         PRINT #1,"DFS"
                   FI$=FI$+"/JCL"
                                                                                                                                                                         PRINT #1,F$
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            FOR
                                                                                    PRINT
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                           PRINT
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            300
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         290
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                           390
```

Fig. 15-2. Program listing for Chain Zapper.

```
name of file to be edited:
                                                                                           PRINT #1,CHR$(13)+CHR$(131)
PRINT #1,"X"+CHR$(131)
PRINT"Would you like to enter another ZAP?"
I$=INKEY$:IF I$="" GOTO 490
F$=MID$(HEX$,N,INSTR(HEX$,CHR$(32)))
                               PRINT #1, MID$(F$, 2,1)+CHR$(131)
            PRINT #1, LEFT$ (F$,1)+CHR$(131)
                                                                                                                                                                                                                             ***** EDIT ZAP CHAIN FILE *****
                                                           #1, CHR$(13)+CHR$(131)
#1, "Y"+CHR$(131)
                                                                                                                                                           IF I$="X" GOTO 240
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                               IF EOF(2) GOTO 610
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    LINEINPUT #2, F$(E)
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   LINEINPUT" Enter
                                                                                                                                                                          PRINT #1, "EXIT"
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     CLS:PRINT:PRINT
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   OPEN "I", 2, FI$
                                                NEXT N
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    GOTO 570
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   CLOSE 2
                                                                                                                                                                                                           GOTO 80
                                                                                                                                                                                         CLOSE 1
                                                                PRINT
                                                                              PRINT
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    E=E+1
                                                                                                                                                                                                                               535
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     550
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      540
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   590
                                                                440
                                                                                            460470
                                                                                                                            480
                                                                                                                                            490
```

```
630 LINEINPUT" Enter name of file for which zaps to be edited
                                                    640 PRINT"Hit Space Bar to see next entry, 'C' to change"
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        * ***** WRITE EDITED FILE TO DISK *****
                                                                                                                                                                                    INPUT "Enter new value :";G$
IF RIGHT$(F$(N),1)=CHR$(131) THEN
F$(N)=G$+CHR$(131);GOTO 740
F$(N)=G$
                                                                                                                             PRINT F$(N);"";
I$=INKEY$:IF I$="" GOTO 690
IF I$<>"C" OR I$<>"c" GOTO 740
                                                                                         IF F$(N)=F3$ THEN FLAG=1
                                                                                                           IF FLAG=0 GOTO 740
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      PRINT #1, F$(N2)
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  FOR N2=1 TO E
                                                                       FOR N=1 TO E
620 CLS:PRINT:PRINT
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                               OPEN "O", 1, FI$
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      NEXT N2
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                           730
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         745
                                                                                          099
                                                                                                                             680
                                                                                                                                                  069
                                                                                                                                                                                    710
```

Fig. 15-2. Program listing for Chain Zapper. (Continued from page 177.)

patch for that particular program. Each byte will be displayed, and may be changed. If several separate ZAPs exist for a single program, you may have to page through several patches to find the one you want.

It is obvious, with postage and media costs as high as they are, that it would be impossible for a company like Apparat to send out chain files in disk or cassette form to do our patching for us. Their support in providing printed sheets for free (so far), is effort enough. However, given a wide enough distribution of chain files created by Chain Zapper, this tedious but necessary chore can be minimized for many more users.



## **Translator**

Most of the BASIC language's limitations stem from its original purpose as a high-level language that would be easy for beginners to learn and use. Its strongest point—the simple English keywords—provides an artificial barrier for those whose primary language is not English. Some of the largest Spanish-speaking communities in the world, for example, are in the United States. The availability of a BASIC in Spanish might make it easier for these citizens to use computers at an earlier age.

A machine-language Spanish-BASIC interpreter for any of these would be ideal. Programs could be written in a Hispanic version of BASIC, run, tested, and debugged in that form. Unfortunately, that would be a major undertaking, best tackled by a software house with some hopes of recouping the time investment through sales—but one-tenth of a loaf is often better than none. Translator is a simple pseudo-compiler that converts programs written in Spanish tiny BASIC to standard BASIC for running.

In other words, the program is used to write the source code, using the Level I type of Spanish keywords, instead of the English BASIC equivalent. As each line is entered the program checks it for various criteria (must begin with a line number, with no more than one statement per line) and generates a new line of code, replacing each of the Spanish keywords with the English equivalent. Both versions may be saved to disk or listed at any time.

Translator combines some of the features of Global Replacer

and Program Proofer. It compares its internal list of allowable keywords with those in the input lines, and replaces them with the equivalents as needed.

Editing is accomplished by re-entering the line. The English ("compiled") version of the program is object code that may be loaded and run under your BASIC interpreter, like any BASIC program, as long as the code entered in Spanish conformed to the normal syntax rules of BASIC. Ideally, the program should be used by a person who already knows standard BASIC to teach a Spanish-speaking person how to program.

The Spanish words chosen are not necessarily the best possible equivalents for the BASIC keywords they replace. The BASIC translations were chosen using two criteria. The Spanish words had to be short and mean approximately what the BASIC equivalents mean. Because keywords have the effect of commands, the imperative form of the verbs was used. Second, programming was made easier by selecting Spanish words that were either the same length or longer than the BASIC keywords.

```
Spanish Version
10 IMPRIMA "PROGRAMMA"
20 ENTRE "SU NOMBRE :";A$
30 SI AS="DAVID" LUEGO IMPRIMA "HOLA
DAVID!"
40 SI A$<>"DAVID" VAYA SUB 100
50 FIN
100 IMPRIMA "HOLA,"; A$
110 RETORNE
English Version
           "PROGRAMMA"
10 PRINT
20 INPUT "SU NOMBRE :"; A$
                                "HOLA
30 IF A$="DAVID" THEN
DAVID! "
40 IF A$<>"DAVID" GOSUB
                            100
50 END
            "HOLA,";A$
100 PRINT
110 RETURN
```

Fig. 16-1. Example of program produced by Translator.

| A(n) A\$ A1\$ B C COM\$ CP\$(n) CU E2\$(n) F\$ F3\$ FLAG G IG\$ L N | Difference in length of keywords. Line entered by user. Used in INKEY\$ loop. Position of quote in line input. Position of colon in line input. Command entered by user. Array storing program lines in English. Counter. Array storing program lines in Spanish. Filename. Filename. Shows whether instructions have been displayed. Loop counter. Program line input by user. Length of program line. Loop counter. |
|---|---|
| IG\$  | Program line input by user.   |
|   | Loop counter.  Name of program in Spanish.  |
| NI\$<br>P<br>X  | Name of program in English. Print@position. Set X coordinate.   |

Fig. 16-2. Variables used in Translator.

To use the program the student types RUN in English, and is shown a summary of the commands and statements available. This list can be summoned at any time by typing HELP or AYUDA at the ">" prompt. An existing program may be loaded from the disk using the CARGE command. Prompts ask for the name of the program in Spanish and English. Then, a program can be edited, or new lines added. Figure 16-1 shows both Spanish and English versions of a program written using Translator.

A specific line in Spanish can be seen at any time by entering ALISTE xxx, where xxx is the line number; by typing just ALISTE, the entire program will be presented, a section at a time. Entering LIST, in English, will display the compiled English version. NUEVO or CORRA will erase the current program in memory, and allow starting over.

Only line numbers between 1 and 200 may be used, and only single statements are allowed per line. Spaces must be used after line numbers and between words. It is permissible to end a line with a space, since one is added automatically. Spaces are essential, because in searching for keywords the program looks not for, say, the letters SI, but for <space>SI<space>. Otherwise, by the time

```
FOR N=833 TO 895
PRINT @ N, CHR$(190);
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  PRINT @ N, CHR$(159);
NEXT N
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       75 " *** Print Border ***
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        FOR X=0 TO 41
SET(1, X)
SET(127, X)
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        FOR N=1 TO 63
各次在各分分分分分分分分分分分分分分分
                                                                                                                                       Translator *
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            本學學學學學學學學學學學學學
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       CLEAR 1000
GOTO 210
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  NEXT N
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        NEXT X
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   PRINT @
PRINT @
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  RETURN
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             200
1110
1110
1110
1110
1110
1110
1100
1100
1100
1100
1100
1100
1100
1100
1100
1100
1100
1100
1100
1100
1100
1100
1100
1100
1100
1100
1100
1100
1100
1100
1100
1100
1100
1100
1100
1100
1100
1100
1100
1100
1100
1100
1100
1100
1100
1100
1100
1100
1100
1100
1100
1100
1100
1100
1100
1100
1100
1100
1100
1100
1100
1100
1100
1100
1100
1100
1100
1100
1100
1100
1100
1100
1100
1100
1100
1100
1100
1100
1100
1100
1100
1100
1100
1100
1100
1100
1100
1100
1100
1100
1100
1100
1100
1100
1100
1100
1100
1100
1100
1100
1100
1100
1100
1100
1100
1100
1100
1100
1100
1100
1100
1100
1100
1100
1100
1100
1100
1100
1100
1100
1100
1100
1100
1100
1100
1100
1100
1100
1100
1100
1100
1100
1100
1100
1100
1100
1100
1100
1100
1100
1100
1100
1100
1100
1100
1100
1100
1100
1100
1100
1100
1100
1100
1100
1100
1100
1100
1100
1100
1100
1100
1100
1100
1100
1100
1100
1100
1100
1100
1100
1100
1100
1100
1100
1100
1100
1100
1100
1100
1100
1100
1100
1100
1100
1100
1100
1100
1100
1100
1100
1100
1100
1100
1100
1100
1100
1100
1100
1100
1100
1100
1100
1100
1100
100
100
100
100
100
100
100
100
100
100
100
100
100
100
100
100
100
100
100
100
100
100
100
100
100
100
100
100
100
100
100
100
100
100
100
100
100
100
100
100
100
100
100
100
100
100
100
100
100
100
100
100
100
100
100
100
100
100
100
100
100
100
100
100
100
100
100
100
100
100
100
100
100
100
100
100
100
100
100
100
100
100
100
100
100
100
100
100
100
100
100
100
100
100
100
100
100
100
100
100
100
100
100
100
100
100
100
100
100
100
100
100
100
100
100
100
100
100
100
100
100
100
100
100
100
100
100
100
100
100
100
100
100
100
100
100
100
100
100
100
100
100
100
100
100
100
100
100
100
100
100
100
100
100
100
100
100
100
100
100
100
100
100
100
100
100
100
100
100
100
100
100
100
100
100
100
100
100
100
100
100
100
100
100
100
100
100
100
100
100
100
100
100
100
100
100
100
100
100
100
100
100
100
100
100
100
100
100
100
100
100
100
100
100
100
100
100
100
100
100
100
100
100
100
100
100
100
100
100
100
100
100
100
100
100
100
100
100
100
100
100
100
100
100
100
100
100
100
100
100
100
100
100
100
100
10
```

```
NW=21
L2=200
C1$=CHR$(34)
C2$=CHR$(58)
C3$=CHR$(32)
DIM A(21), E$(21), E2$(200), CP$(200), E3$(21), SP$(21)
CLS
                                                                                                                                                                                                             335 * *** Read Difference Data ***
                                                                                                                                  * *** Null arrays ***
* *** Initialize ***
                                                                                                                                                       FOR N=1 TO 200 E2$(N)=^{n} CP$(N)=^{n}
                     DEFINT A-Z
                                                                                                           RESTORE
                     210
220
230
240
250
250
280
                                                                                                                                  295
205
```

Fig. 16-3. Program listing for Translator.

FOR N=1 TO NW

340 :

```
470 DATA IF, SI, RUN, CORRA, INPUT, ENTRE, LIST, ALISTE, END,
FIN, PRINT, IMPRIMA, READ, LLEVE, DATA, DATOS, THEN, LUEGO, FOR,
PARA, STOP, CESE, NEXT, PROXIMO
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         460 DATA 0, 2, 0, 2, 0, 2, 1, 1, 1, 1, 0, 3, 2, 2, 1, 3, 1, 0,
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             480 DATA CLS, BORRE, GOTO, VAYA A, RESTORE, RESTAURE
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     190 DATA GOSUB, VAYA SUB, RETURN, RETORNE, ON, EN
                                                            *** Read Spanish and English keywords ***
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  E$(N)=E3$(N)+STRING$(A(N), 32)
                                                                                                                                                                             SPAN$ (N)=C3$+SPAN$ (N)+C3$
                                                                                                                                E3$(N)=C3$+E3$(N)+C3$
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 * *** Equalize length ***
                                                                                                                                                        READ SPAN$(N)
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                           FOR N=1 TO NW
                                                                                       FOR N=1 TO NW
                                                                                                            READ E3$(N)
READ A(N)
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        NEXT N
                   NEXT N
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  425
                                                                   365
370
380
  3
3
3
0
0
0
                                                                                                                                   390
```

```
GOTO 550
PRINT @ 264, STRING$(50, 32);
PRINT @ 264,"This program allows Spanish-speaking students
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                           620 PRINT @ 328, "write programs using Spanish keywords instead
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   of";
630 PRINT @ 392,"the English equivalents. Most LEVEL I-type
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 640 PRINT @ 456, "words may be used.";
650 PRINT @ 520, "The program prepares two versions of
                                                                                                                                                         PRINT @ 144, "SPANISH-ENGLISH PROGRAM TRANSLATOR";
PRINT @ 264, "Do you want instructions (Y/N)?";
DATA STEP, GRADA, REM, NOTA, LET, HACE
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     IF A1$="" THEN 550
IF A1$="Y" THEN 600
IF A1$="N" THEN CLS: GOTO 1430
                                                                                                        *** Instructions ***
                          GOSUB 80
                                                    FLAG=1
                                                                                                        525
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                          580
590
```

Fig. 16-3. Program listing for Translator. (Continued from page 185.)

the

```
into
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            be "; 760 PRINT @ 520, "saved to disk under filenames of your choice.
                                                                                                                                                700 PRINT @ 136,"Although programs may be written in Spanish,
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            @ 392, STRING$(50, 32);
@ 456,"Both the Spanish and English versions may
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       770 PRINT @ 584," English version can then be loaded and RUN
                                                                                                                                                                              they";
710 PRINT @ 200,"may not be RUN in that form (this is not
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    @ 264, "preter) until they have been translated
                      @ 584,"-- one in Spanish, and a 'translated',
                                                                     670 PRINT @ 648,"version.";
680 PRINT @ 781," Hit any key to continue :";
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     Eng-";
730 PRINT @ 328,"lish-BASIC.
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      IF INKEY$ ="" THEN 790
                                                                                                                   690 IF INKEY$ ="" THEN 690
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             780 PRINT @ 648,"ally.
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     720 PRINT
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                740 PRINT
                         660 PRINT
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      750 PRINT
                                                 English";
program";
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 inter-";
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        norm-";
```

```
880 PRINT @ 648, STRING$(50, 32);
890 IF INKEY$ ="" THEN 890
900 PRINT @ 136,"Other disk BASIC keywords not translated may be
                                                                                                                                                                                                   830 PRINT @ 328, "and all words. Only line numbers between 1 and
                                                                                                                                          User MUST add a space after line numbers
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            910 PRINT @ 200, "incorporated into the program if they adhere
                            keywords";
810 PRINT @ 200,"where needed. Only one statement is allowed
800 PRINT @ 136, "To use, type in program, using the Spanish
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                850 PRINT @ 456, STRING$(50, 32);
860 PRINT @ 520,"To edit any line, just re-enter that line
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       870 PRINT @ 584,"and the new line (like LEVEL I editing).
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   These include:
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                              840 PRINT @ 392,"200 may be used.
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                920 PRINT @ 264, "correct syntax.
                                                                                                         per ";
820 PRINT @ 264,"line.
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 number
```

Fig. 16-3. Program listing for Translator. (Continued from page 187.)

```
40
                                                                                               @ 520, STRING$(50, 32);
@ 584,"If you have any questions type either 'HELP' or
328, STRING$(50, 32);
392,"ELSE,INSTR,RIGHT$,LEFT$, as well as functions,
                                                                                                                                                         980 PRINT @ 648,"'AYUDA'. You will be shown a list like these:
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                               20 SI A$=";Cl$;"JOSE";Cl$;" VAYA A
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             @ 136,"A typical program might look something like
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   1050 PRINT @ 200, STRING$(50, 32);
1060 PRINT @ 264,"
LLAMA";Cl$;";A$ ";
                                                          @ 456,"(INT,RND), operators (AND,OR).
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       30 CESE
                                                                                                                                                                                                                  STRING$(50, 32);
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   STRING$ (50,
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       STRING$ (50,
                                                                                                                                                                                                THEN 990
                                                                                                                                                                                                                @ 200, 8
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       1080 PRINT @ 392,"
                                                                                                                                                                                               990 IF INKEY$ =""
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                               1070 PRINT @ 328,
                                                                                                                                                                                                                1000 PRINT
1010 PRINT
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       PRINT
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                          GOSUB
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             PRINT
                                                          950 PRINT
                                                                                                                970 PRINT
                940 PRINT
                                                                                                960 PRINT
 PRINT
```

```
40 IMPRIMA ";Cl$;"HOLA JOSE";Cl$;"
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       1230 PRINT @ 264, "Ahorre (ahorrar una programma al disk)
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                           (cargar una programma de disk)
                                                                                  , STRING$(50, 32);
, STRING$(50, 32);
,"Hit any key to run program
                                                    FIN
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    1210 GOSUB 80
1220 PRINT @ 136," Los Mandados:
                                                   20
                                                                                                                                  IF INKEY$ ="" THEN 1140
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        1240 PRINT @ 328, "CARGE
                                                                                  PRINT @ 584, S
PRINT @ 648, S
PRINT @ 778,"
                                                 520,"
1090 PRINT @ 456,
                                                                                               1120 PRINT 6 48
1130 PRINT 6 778
1140 IF INKEY$ = 1150 FLAG=0
1160 CLS
1170 GOTO 1430
1190 GOTO 1430
1190 GOTO 1430
                                                 1100 PRINT @
                                                                                  PRINT @
```

Fig. 16-3. Program listing for Translator. (Continued from page 189.)

| (Alistar una programma en espanol) | (Alistar una programma en ingles) | BORRE                          |  | ORRA INPUT=ENTRE        | LIST-ALISTE PRINT-IMPRIMA | LUEGO NEXT=PROXIMO | VAYA A RESTORE=RESTAURE      | CESE CLS=BORRE  | GRADA GOSUB=VAYA SUB | ACE RETURN=RETORNE               |
|------------------------------------|-----------------------------------|--------------------------------|--|-------------------------|---------------------------|--------------------|------------------------------|-----------------|----------------------|----------------------------------|
| istar ur                           | istar ur                          | s, nuevo, i                    | TER>";   | RUN=CORRA               | LIST=                     | THEN=LUEGO         | GOTO=VAYA                    | STOP=CESE       | STEP=GRADA           | LET=HACE                         |
| 1250 PRINT @ 392,"ALISTE (Al       | 456, "LIST                        | @ 584,"AYUDA,CORRE,NUEVO,BORRE | PRINT @ 714,"Empuje <enter>";<br/>IF INKEY\$ ="" THEN 1290<br/>PRINT @ 136,"Las declaraciones:</enter> | 1310 PRINT @ 264,"IF=SI | @ 328,"END=FIN            | @ 392,"READ=LLEVE  | 1340 PRINT @ 456,"DATA=DATOS | @ 520,"FOR=PARA | @ 584,"ON=EN         | 1370 PRINT @ 648,"REM=NOTA<br>"; |
| യ                                  | <b>@</b>                          |                                | @ <u>H</u> @   | ම                       | <b>©</b>                  | <b>©</b>           | <b>©</b>                     | <b>@</b>        | ඟ                    | ම                                |
| PRINT                              | PRINT                             | PRINT                          |  | PRINT                   | 1320 PRINT                | 1330 PRINT         | PRINT                        | 1350 PRINT      | 1360 PRINT           | ,<br>PRINT                       |
| 1250                               | 1260                              | 1270                           | 1280<br>1290<br>1300   | 1310                    | 1320                      | 1330               | 1340                         | 1350            | 1360                 | 1370                             |

```
1430
1430
                                                                                                                                                                          GOTO
                                                                                                                                                                                   GOTO
                                                                                                                                                                         1200:
                                                                                                                                                                                  1200:
PRINT @ 714, STRING$(50, 32);
IF INKEY$ ="" THEN 1390
                                                      * *** Get Keyboard Input ***
                                                                                                                                                                                  GOSUB
                                                                                                                                                                        GOSUB
                                                                                                                                              2050
2180
2330
                                                                                                                   *** Check for Command
                                                                                                                                                                                           280
                                                                                                                                                                                                   280
                                                                                                                                              THEN
                                                                                                                                                        THEN
                                                                                                                                                                THEN
                                                                                                                                                                         THEN
                                                                                                                                                                                  THEN
                                                                                                                                                                                           THEN
                                                                                                                                      THEN
                                                                                                   COM$=LEFT$(A$, 4)
                  IF FLAG=1 RETURN
                                                                                                                                     COM$="ALIS"
                                                                                                                                              COM$="AHOR"
                                                                                                                                                       COM$="CARG"
                                                                                                                                                                        COM$="AYUD"
                                                                                                                                                                                 COM$="HELP"
                                                                                                                                                                                           COM$="CORR"
                                                                                                                                                                COM$="LIST"
                                                                                         LINE INPUT A$
                                                                        PRINT">";
                                    RETURN
                                                                                 P1=0
                                                                       1430
                                                                                1440
1450
        1390
                                                                                                                                                                                 1520
1530
1540
                 1400
                           1410
                                                      1425
                                                                                                 1460
                                    1420
                                                                                                                                              1480
                                                                                                                                                                        1510
                                                                                                                    1465
                                                                                                                                                       1490
                                                                                                                                                                1500
```

Fig. 16-3. Program listing for Translator. (Continued from page 191.)

THEN

COM\$="NUEV"

```
IF C<>0 THEN PRINT"SOLAMENTE UNA DECLARACION CADA LINEA":
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     IF LI>L2 PRINT"COMENCE LA LINEA CON UN NUMERO MENOS
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             IF MID$(A$, T, 1)=CHR$(32)THEN 1730
T$=T$+MID$(A$, T, 1)
COM$="BORR" THEN CLS: GOTO 1430
                                                                                                                                                                                                                          " *** Check for line number ***
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 FOR T=1 TO LEN(A$)
                                                                      IF C=0 AND B=0 THEN IF B=0 THEN 1670
                                                                                                                            IF C<B THEN 1670
IF C>P1 THEN 1670
                                                                                                                 Pl=INSTR(W$, C1$)
                                                         C=INSTR(A$, C2$)
                                                                                                 W$=MID$(A$, B+1)
                                           B=INSTR(A$, C1$
                             A$=A$+CHR$(32)
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                           LI=VAL(T$)
                                                                                                                                                         GOTO 1680
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             NEXT T
               IG$=A$
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 1700
1710
1720
1730
1740
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    1690
                                                                                                                1630
1640
1650
1660
                                                                                                                                                                                                                             1685
                                                                      1600
1610
1620
                                                                                                                                                                                       GOTO
                                                          1590
```

```
";L2: GOTO 1430
1750 IF LI<1 PRINT"COMENCE LA LINEA CON UN NUMERO": GOTO 1430
                                          *** Look for Spanish keywords ***
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      1885 * *** List Spanish Program Lines
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                *** Make Substitution ***
                                                                     P=INSTR(A$, SPAN$(G))
IF P>0 THEN 1830
NEXT G
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                           1870 MID$(A$, P, L)=E$(G)
1880 GOTO 1790
                                                                                                                            CP$(LI)=A$
GOTO 1430
IF P<B THEN 1860
IF P>P1 THEN 1860
GOTO 1790
                                                          FOR G=1 TO NW
                                                                                                                                                                                                    L=LEN(E$(G))
                                                                                                                 E2$(LI)=IG$
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                1865
                                                       1760
1770
1780
1780
1800
1810
1820
1830
1830
```

Fig. 16-3. Program listing for Translator. (Continued from page 193.)

```
FOR N=1 TO 200

IF E2$(N)="" OR E2$(N)="," THEN 2030

PRINT E2$(N)

CU=CU+1

IF CU/14=INT(CU/14)THEN PRINT"EMPUJE < ENTER >";;
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  INPUT"NOMBRE DE LA PROGRAMA EN ESPANOL "";NE$
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                               INGLES "" , NI$
                          V2$=MID$(A$, V)
V3=VAL(V2$)
IF V3>0 THEN PRINT E2$(V3) ELSE 1960
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        2045 " *** Save Programs to Disk ***
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                               EN
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                               PROGRAMA
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             INPUT"NOMBRE DE LA OPEN"O", 1, NE$

: FOR N=1 TO 200
V=INSTR(A$, C3$)
IF V=0 THEN 1960
                                                                             GOTO 1430
CU=1
                                                                                                                                                                                                 2030 : NEXT N
2040 GOTO 1430
                                                                 PRINT
                                                                                                                                                                                     INPUT ES
                          119920 1
19930 1
19930 1
19950 C
19950 C
19990 C
2010 2
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                               2060
2070
2080
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   2050
```

```
INPUT"NOMBRE DE LA PROGRAMA EN ESPANOL :";F3$
                                                                                                                                                                      EN INGLES : " , F3$
                                                                                                                     2175 ' *** Load Programs From Disk ***
PRINT#1, E2$(N); CHR$(13);
                                                           PRINT#1, CP$(N); CHR$(13);
                                                                                                                                                                      PROGRAMA
                                                                                                                                                                                                                     LINE INPUT#1, E2$(N)
                                                                                                                                                                    INPUT"NOMBRE DE LA
                                                                                                                                                                                           OPEN"I",1, F$

FOR N=1 TO 200
                                               FOR N=1 TO 200
                                                                                                                                                                                F3$=LEFT$(F3$, 8)
                                                                                                                                                         F$=LEFT$(F3$, 8)
                                   OPEN"O",1, NI$
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      OPEN"I",1, F3$
            NEXT N
                                                                       NEXT N
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                NEXT N
                                                                                               GOTO 1430
                                                                                 CLOSE 1
                        CLOSE
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            CLOSE ]
                                                                                                                                                                                                      2230
2240
2250
2260
         2100
2110
2120
2130
2140
2150
                                                                                 2160
                                                                                                                                                        2190
2200
2210
2220
```

Fig. 16-3. Program listing for Translator. (Continued from page 195.)

```
IF CP$(N)<>"" THEN PRINT CP$(N): CU=CU+1
IF CU/14=INT(CU/14)THEN PRINT"EMPUJE < ENTER >";:
          LINE INPUT#1, CP$(N)
                                                                            1 *** List Programs ***
FOR N=1 TO 200
                                                                                                FOR N=1 TO 200
                                CLOSE 1
GOTO 1430
                      NEXT N
                                                                                                                                             : NEXT N
                                                                                                                                                                   GOTO 1430
                                                                                                                                                       PRINT
                                                     CU=1
                                                                                                                                   INPUT E$
                                                                                                                      2360
                                                                                                                                             2370
2380
2390
                                                                                                  2340
2350
 2280
2290
2300
2320
2330
                                                                             2335
```

Fig. 16-3. Program listing for Translator. (Continued from page 197.)

the loop which searches for keywords got to SIGUIENTE, the word would have been changed to IFGUIENTE.

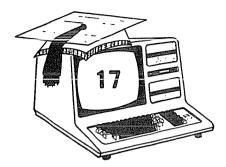
Examining the program, described in Figs. 16-2 and 16-3, we can see that actual translation from Spanish to English is simple. The programmer enters a line, which is loaded into A\$ in line 1450. The first four characters are checked to see if any of the allowable commands are included. If not, then the line must begin with a line number, or an error message will be generated. A check is made for a colon outside quotes, which would indicate a multiple-statement line. An error trap also checks to make sure that the line number is within the range allowed.

A FOR-NEXT loop beginning at line 1760 compares each word in the line with the permissible keywords, and, if one is found, the substitution for the equivalent English keyword is made. Several subroutines take care of LISTing the program lines, stored in two string arrays.

The only hitch in Translator is a problem common to all compilers. The programmer cannot run the program to test it until it has been compiled. Then, if bugs are found, the compiled version cannot be changed (because, in this case, the Spanish-speaking person supposedly cannot understand the BASIC object code). Of course, an English-speaking person can edit it, but for those for whom Translator was intended the object code may mean about as much as a machine-language dump.

Because Translator was meant as a learning tool, it was designed to be easy to change. Keywords can be added by appending them to the proper locations in the DATA lines, adding numeric DATA that shows the difference in length between the longer Spanish keyword and the shorter English equivalent. WR must also be changed to reflect the new number of words.

This program will compile from any language. The user could select keywords in, say, French, and enter them with their English BASIC counterparts in the DATA lines. All the prompts in Spanish will have to be changed as well, but these have purposely been kept to a minimum in the program.



## **Document Sorter**

The final program in the book will be of use to anyone who writes or uses long documents, or who is interested in the clarity of their writing style—even if they generate nothing longer than a memo or letter. Document Sorter will provide you with an alphabetized list of every word in a document, or even a book-length manuscript. In fact, the program was written for that very purpose.

Are you preparing an index or glossary for a term paper, article, or book you are working on? Curious about the scope of your vocabulary? Document Sorter will take most text documents of reasonable size, throw out the punctuation marks and numbers, and collect the remaining words into a file sorted alphabetically. Duplicates and many plurals of a root word are also ignored, so that you wind up with a listing only of the unique words in your document.

This program was written recently to help in the preparation of a particularly technical book. After about 60,000 words were run through it, the result was a list of a few thousand unique words that was further condensed to form a glossary and index. Document Sorter will also work with your shorter text items, such as letters, short stories, or school assignments. Odd punctuation won't throw it, and capitalized words are automatically converted to lowercase. You can even use the program on your BASIC programs to find out what keywords were used. Line numbers and other non-alphabetic characters will be thrown out as well.

Those who want to measure the "fog index" in their writing can

use the program to compile a list of the commonly used words in their written vocabulary. Just append a representative number of letters or memos together, or any other documents that you want to study, and run the program. Since duplicate words are eliminated, the listing produced is a fair gauge of a vocabulary. If you wish, changing a single line in the program will keep Document Sorter from dropping the duplicates; in this case actual frequency of word usage can be measured.

Note that you will need a text processor to generate the text files to be checked. The program was tested with Scripsit files, which were saved in ASCII form using the "S, A filename" syntax. The program will work with any ASCII file, including programs, if the goal is to alphabetize the words used in the program listings. Line numbers, other numeric constants, and many single-character variables will be filtered out as well. Variable names with two or more characters will be left alone, and sorted along with keywords and words within prompts.

Also note that the program does not incorporate a sorting routine of its own. Instead, it simply acts as a sophisticated filter, and relies on the fast machine-language sort built into many operating systems. The sort used here is the CMD"O" sort found in NEWDOS/80 2.0. This works with TRS-80 Models I and III, or Model 4 operating in Model III mode.

Model III TRSDOS also has a similar CMD"O" string sort, and some other operating systems may have their own provisions for fast, machine-language sorts. Various utility programs can also be adapted. Because of the size of the arrays used in this program (up to 4,000 elements), I didn't bother to include a BASIC sort routine, which would be much too slow. Since Document Sorter requires a disk drive anyway, most users should have an operating system with a built-in sort.

Several interesting programming tricks make Document Sorter an educational as well as useful module. Warning: This program uses a *lot* of string space. As a result, it can take quite a while to sort a fairly long document, say, one 3,000 to 4,000 words long (that's 13 to 18 double-spaced typewritten pages). The time needed is the result of string "garbage collection," during which process the computer may appear as if it has locked up.

While there might be more efficient ways of carrying out the designed functions, ones that would not involve this string collection bottleneck, the most obvious method was chosen for this book because it was quicker to write, and easier to explain.

Your entire document to be sorted is loaded into memory at one time, and is stored in a string array, WRD\$(n). This array is DIMensioned to 4,000 elements in line 80, and allows a document with a maximum size of 4,000 words. This will handle most documents, although I had to break my book up into about 15 different sections. Once the program had thrown out all the duplicates and nonwords in each section, I was left with a much shorter collection of words. These were merged and run through the program additional times until I ended up with a single sorted file.

Although the machine-language sort of your array is very fast, parsing the document into individual words takes time. I'd recommend letting the program run while you do something else. Shorter documents can be processed much faster than the equivalent amount of text in a single, longer document. That is, four 1,000-word files will be sorted faster than one 4,000-word document.

The reason for this is that, as mentioned, some time is taken up in so-called "garbage collection" as string space is consumed by your program. With longer documents, the available string space becomes smaller as more of the document is processed, so string collection must be done more frequently.

Shorter documents do not require so much time at this task, and thus run to completion sooner. Since I had time to spare, I wrote the program to allow maximum document size, even if the longer documents frequently slowed down the program. While it might take two or three minutes to process a 1,000-word file, it can take 10 minutes (or longer) to handle a 4,000-word document. You can let your computer operate unattended or, as I did, allow it to process many files consecutively overnight. The way to do this will be described later.

Garbage collection of unused string space can also be cut down by CLEARing as much space at the beginning of the program as possible. With a 4,000-element array, only about 24,000 bytes were free for strings (line 60). If you will be sorting only shorter documents, you can decrease the size of the array to, say, 2,000 elements, and increase the available string space to 30,000 bytes or more.

To help speed up Document Sorter, variables were defined as integers (line 90). In addition, Model 4 owners can accelerate their computer's operation by including line 70. This OUT statement allows running the Model 4 at full 4 MHz speed, even in Model III mode. Owners of "real" Model III or Model I computers will want to delete line 70.

The first step in setting up Document Sorter is to decide what characters will be considered word "delimiters." That is, how do we know when we have reached the end of a word? Obviously, a space (CHR\$(32)) indicates the end of a word. But most punctuation, such as commas, periods, question marks, and (usually) apostrophes, also marks ends of words. Hyphens and other characters such as parentheses and asterisks are also not found within words. So Document Sorter looks for any of these and, if one is found, ends the current word. The only exception is when a character other than "s" follows an apostrophe. Thus, "can't" or "I've" would not be truncated after the apostrophe, but the terminal "s" on "America's" would be cut off. This effectively filters out possessive forms of words, while allowing most contractions. A few contractions end in "s" (such as "it's" and "let's"), but those are minor exceptions that don't detract seriously from the usefulness of this program.

Fortunately from a programming standpoint, most of the word delimiters used by Document Sorter occur all in one place in the standard ASCII list—CHR\$(21) to CHR\$(64). The program builds one long string, containing one example of each, in lines 100 to 120. At this point, DELIMIT\$ is equal to !"#%—'()\*,-./0123456789:;<=>?@. Three more characters, CHR\$ (140)-CHR\$(142), are used by Scriptsit to mark the ends of lines, paragraphs, and pages. These are added to the list so that Document Sorter will recognize them as end-of-word markers and filter them out. If your own word processing program uses special CHR\$ codes, add them to DELIMIT\$ in line 130.

The next section, lines 140 to 200, asks the user for the desired filename to process, and the filename of the output file (the sorted words). If you have many documents to sort, as I did, you can replace the LINEINPUT statements with a large FOR-NEXT loop beginning at line 180 and ending at line 530. I called each of the files I wanted to sort "CH1," "CH2," "CH3," etc., and stored them on disk under those names. Then, each time through the FOR-NEXT loop, the filenames were constructed automatically:

```
160 FOR CHAPTER=1 TO 10
```

170 F\$="CH"+MID\$(STR\$(CHAPTER),2)

180 F2\$=F\$+"/SRT"

. . .

530 NEXT CHAPTER

Actual processing of the file begins at lines 210-220, where a

A about accellerate account accounted actual actually add added addition additional adopted after again against all allow allowed allowing allows alphabetic alphabetically already also alternative although america amount an and another any anything anyway apostrophe appear are array article as ascii asks assignments asterisks at automatically available award awhile basic be because been begin beginning begins bit bm book bother break builds built busch but by called can can't candidate capitalized carrying case ch chance changes chapter character check chose chr clearing cline cmd codes collect collection command commas competion computer condensed considered constructed consumed containing content continue contractions converted counter cu current cut david decide deciding decrease deemed defined delete delimit delimiter designed desired detract did didn't different dimensioned disk divided do document does doesn't don't dos down drive drops duplicate each easier educational effect effectively efficient element else encountered end ended ending ends enhancements entire equal especially etc even example except exception explain fast faster feature few fifteen fig figured file filename files filter filtered filtering filters find finished first fog followed following follows for form format formed forms fortunately found four free frequently from full fun further garbage glossary goto had handle has have help here how hypens i i'd i've identical if ignored iii in include including increase incremented index indicate indicating individual instance instead instr integers interesting intervening into is isn't it its itself just keeps kent keywords killing know language large last leave left legal len length let letter letting line lineinput lines list listing Im loaded located lock long longer look looked looks loop lot

Fig. 17-1. Words in Chapter 17, compiled by Document Sorter.

lowercase is machine make many mark marker marks maximum may mhz memory merged message mid might minor misnomer mode model module more most much my name named names nest newdos next ni non nonwords not nothing noting now nulled number obvious obviously occur odd of off offered ohio on once one only operating operation operator or other out output own page paper paragraphs parentheses parsing particular past periods of ol place plural point position possessive possible preparation preparing present previous printed process processed processing program programming programs proportionately provisions punctuation question quicker quickly quite ran range rd reached read real really reason reasonably recently recognize recommend reduced remaining reorder replace requirements requires resisted result resume right rm root routine run running s' same save saved saver say school scope screen scripsit second section see seriously serves setting several short shorter shown similar since single size sized slip slowed smaller so some something sooner sort sorted sorter sorting sorts space spare special speed spend srt standard standpoint starts statement step stored stories str string strip successive such syntax system take taken takes taking task temptation term terminal text than that the their them then there these things this those thousand three through throw thrown thus time tm to too total track tricks trs truncated under understand unique until unused unwanted up uppercase use used useful user uses using usually utility valid value variables variations various very vocabulary wait want wanted warning was way we well were what when where which while whole will wind with within won't word work working works worth would wrd write written wrote ws year yet you your zero

Total words in file: 1885. Unique words in file; 538.

```
DEL IMIT$=DEL IMIT$+CHR$ (140)+CHR$ (141)+CHR$ (142)
                                                                                                                                                                                            *** Construct word delimiter string ***
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                               " *** Enter filenames, open files ***
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       LINEINPUT"ENTER FILENAME TO SORT
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            PRINT TAB(10)"Document Sorter"
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                          DELIMIT$=DELIMIT$+CHR$(N)
於於於於於於於於於於於於於於於於於於於於於
於
於
                                            Document Sorter *
                                                                                   安安京京京京·安安京京京京京京京京京京京京京京京
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    FOR N=21 TO 64
                                                                                                                               DIM WRD$ (4000)
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                PRINT: PRINT
                                                                                                          CLEAR 24000
                                                                                                                                                   DEFINT A-Z
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                NEXT N
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        140
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                               135
                                                                                                                               80
80
80
                                                                                                                                                                                              95
```

```
' *** Convert to lowercase, check for delimiters ***
                                                                                                                                                                                                                           FOR N=1 TO LEN(A$)
B$=MID$(A$,N,1)
IF B$=>"A" AND B$=<"Z" THEN B$=CHR$(ASC(B$)+32)
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         PLACE=INSTR(DELIMIT$,B$):IF PLACE<>0 GOTO 270
LINEINPUT"ENTER OUTPUT FILENAME :
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 IF B$<>"" GOTO 300
IF MID$(A$,N+1,1)="s" GOTO 300
                                                                          * *** Read Line From Disk ***
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                *** Add word to array ***
                                                                                                                  IF EOF(1) GOTO 380
                  OPEN "I",1,F$
OPEN "O",2,F2$
                                                                                                                                        LINEINPUT#1, A$
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                ELSE GOTO 350
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                              GOTO 350
                                                                          205
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                295
                                                                                                                                                                                  225
```

Fig. 17-2. Program listing for Document Sorter.

300 CU=CU+1:WRD\$(CU)=C\$:C\$="":PRINT WRD\$(CU)

```
IF LEN(WRD$(CU))>1 GOTO 360
IF WRD$(CU)="a" OR WRD$(CU)="i" GOTO 360 ELSE GOTO 340
                                 IF WRD$(CU)="" OR WRD$(CU)="s" OR VAL(WRD$(CU))>0
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       405 ' *** Write non-repeating words to file ***
* *** Filter out null words, numbers ***
                                                                                                                               " *** Add character to current word ***
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    PRINT"SORTING FILE OF ";CU;" ITEMS."
                                                  THEN CU=CU-1:GOTO 360
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   375 * *** Sort array ***
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      CMD"O", CU, WRD$(1)
                                                                                                   CU=CU-1:GOTO 360
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                          FOR N=1 TO CU
                                                                                                                                                                                  NEXT N
GOTO 210
                                                                                                                                                                   C$=C$+B$
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       380 CLS
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       390
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                          410
                                                                                                                                                                                   360
                                                                                                                                   345
                                                                                                                                                                    350
  305
                                                                     320
330
340
                                    310
```

```
IF WRD$(N-1)<>LEFT$(WRD$(N),LEN(WRD$(N-1))) GOTO 450
IF RIGHT$(WRD$(N),1)="s" THEN GOTO 480
                                                                                                                                                                                                   PRINT #2,""
PRINT#2,"Total words in file : ";STR$(CU);"."
PRINT#2,"Unique words in file :";STR$(NI);"."
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   PRINT "Do you want to sort another file?
                                                                                                                                                            *** Write results to file ***
WRD$(N)=WRD$(N-1) GOTO 480
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         IF A$="y" OR A$="Y" THEN RUN
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      A$=INKEY$:IF A$="" GOTO 550
                                                                               PRINT#2, WRD$(N);" ";
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       *** RUN again? ***
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                              CLS: PRINT: PRINT
                                                           PRINT WRD$(N)
                                                                                                  NI=NI+J
                                                                                                                      Z
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                               CLOSE
                                                                                                                     NEXT
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             CLS
                                                                                                                                                            485
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       525
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            570
                                                                                                                                                                                                                        500
510
520
```

Fig. 17-2. Program listing for Document Sorter. (Continued from page 207.)

line is read in from your ASCII text file. In addition to text files, Document Sorter will also process programs that you have saved in ASCII form (SAVE"filename", A), although most of the content (such as line numbers) will be ignored.

If the end-of-file marker is not encountered, the program starts a FOR-NEXT loop from 1 to the length of the current text line, A\$. Each successive character in A\$ is looked at, using MID\$, and stored in B\$. If B\$ is an alphabetic character in the range from uppercase A to uppercase Z, it is converted to lowercase in line 250. Then, a programming time-saver is used to see if B\$ equals any of the word delimiters.

One way to do this would be to nest yet another FOR-NEXT loop, and check B\$ against each delimiter character, which we might have stored in a string array:

```
260 FOR N1=1 TO 46
```

261 IF B\$=DELIMIT\$(N1) GOTO 270

262 NEXT N1

This would slow things down quite a bit. An alternative would be to use the DELIMIT\$ we already defined, and check each character against B\$:

```
260 FOR N1=1 to LEN(DELIMIT$)
```

261 IF B\$=MID\$(DELIMIT\$.N1.1) GOTO 270

262 NEXT N1

This is also a bit slow. Instead, INSTR looks at the whole DE-LIMIT\$ string and finds B\$, if present, much more quickly. If the position of any of the delimiters does not equal zero, the program drops down to line 270, where it checks to see if B\$ equals an apostrophe (line 270). If it does, and the apostrophe is followed by "s", the word is allowed to continue to the next word delimiter. (This might be a space; Document Sorter also does not filter out possessives ending in "s'".)

Once a valid word ending has been located, the word counter CU is incremented by 1, and the word, C\$, is stored in WRD\$(CU). C\$ is nulled to begin the next word, and the word is printed to the screen.

Some words are filtered out at this point. If WRD\$(CU) equals nothing (""), or is only the letter "s," or has a value (indicating that it is a number), then CU is reduced to its previous value, effectively killing the word. Single character words other than "a" and "I" are also left out of the array.

When the end of file is reached, the array is sorted. NEWDOS/80 2.0's syntax is shown in line 400; you may have to make some changes to account for your particular DOS or sorting utility. Then most of the sorted words are written to a disk file, with one last filtering taking place.

Beginning at line 410, a FOR-NEXT loop from 1 to CU first checks to see if WRD\$(N) equals WRD\$(N-1). This would indicate a duplicate word. Only the first instance of a word is written to the disk file. The program also checks to see if a word and the previous word are identical except for a terminal "s." If so, the second word (the plural) is not written to the file. Some plurals *will* slip past, especially those divided from their root word by an intervening word, such as "name named names." I deemed it not worth the bother to look for all plurals, because there are many not formed using "s" that slip into the file anyway.

A counter, NI, keeps track of how many words are actually written to the file. When finished, the program writes a message at the end of the file noting how many total words were in the file, and how many unique words have been printed to the file.

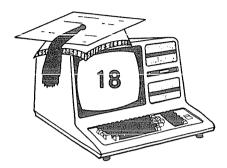
Then the operator is offered the chance to run the program again. Now that you understand the workings of Document Sorter, you might want to add enhancements that will filter out some of the exceptions not accounted for. I've resisted the temptation to include *all* the variations, to leave some of the fun up to you. For example, to look for possessives ending in "s'," just add the following line:

415 IF RIGHT\$(WRD\$(N),2)="s' " GOTO 480

or

415 IF RIGHT\$(WRD\$(N),2)="s' " THEN WRD\$(N)= LEFT\$(WRD\$(N), LEN(WRD\$(N)-1)

A sorted list of the words in this chapter, processed by Document Sorter is shown in Fig. 17-1, while the program itself is listed in Fig. 17-2.



## Some Tips

The whole aim of this book has been to show you how to make your programming more efficient by letting other programs write your code for you. The 17 programs presented so far generate program lines, modify software, or perform other tasks for you. However, there is no reason to limit your automatic TRS-80 to just those utilities included here. There are actually many, many programs on the market that will streamline your work.

There is one tool you may not have thought of—unless you are an old-time programmer, or write in assembly language or for compilers. That utility is your word processor. Word processors of today have much in common with text editors, used in the past to write programs that are compiled or assembled into machine-language code at runtime. However, most BASIC programmers today have never written a program with a text processor. The majority have worked only with interpreters. An interpreter is, of course, a computer program that takes the instructions written by the programmer, and translates it into the computer's machine language each time a line is run.

That is, when a line like FOR N=1 TO 50:B=A+C:NEXT N is encountered, the interpreter will calculate the machine code fifty different times. This is why interpreters are so much slower than machine-language programs. However, there are advantages to interpreters. One is that a program can be written a small part at a time, with each section run, tested, and then modified immediately.

Another advantage is that interpreters can include error-trapping features that handle user input—such as attempts to store numbers larger than 32,767 in an integer variable—that might have been unanticipated when the program was written.

Compilers and assemblers are less forgiving. Code is written, and the source code used to produce the runtime object code. Mistakes can only be corrected by modifying the source code and then compiling or assembling new object code. Partially because of this, BASIC interpreters have been the favored tool, but TRS-80 BASIC programmers have missed some of the editing and program writing tools possible with word processors.

Unless special utility programs are used, the TRS-80 Models I/III and 4 rely on *line-oriented* editing. That is, if a change must be made in line 40, the programmer types in EDIT 40 and makes changes only to that one line. If a similar change must be made to line 50 (such as changing all the PRINTs to LPRINTs), it is necessary to EDIT that line, and so on throughout the program. Making a lot of changes to an existing program can be tedious and time-consuming.

But wait. What if the program were loaded into the word processor as if it were a document? Then the arrow keys could be used to zip the cursor around the program, and changes could be made by overtyping, global search and replace, and other powerful features.

In truth, this *screen-oriented* program editing is nothing new. Some computer systems, such as the Commodore PET, VIC-20, Commodore 64, and even Radio Shack computers like the Model 100, use this type of editing, or some variation. With the Commodore line, for example, any program line that appears on the screen can be edited simply by placing the cursor over a character and typing, inserting, or deleting as desired. If changes are to be permanent, the programmer hits enter while the cursor is still on the program line. Otherwise, (or by hitting shift RETURN) the changes are ignored. Duplicating a program line can be accomplished simply by editing the line number. A copy of the line appears under the new line number, while the old program line remains.

With the TRS-80 Model 100, entering an edit command for a line, or range of lines, actually causes the portable computer to enter its TEXT mode, with each of the lines specified translated to ASCII form for editing. In this case, however, a program line number can be edited, but the old program line is deleted.

Although utilities are available to give other TRS-80s screen editing, you probably own one already: your word processor. Programs can easily be loaded into Scripsit, edited, and put back on disk. All of the programs in this book, in fact, were at least partially edited using Scripsit.

The only "trick" to using a word processing program as a program editor is to remember to save the program from BASIC in ASCII form. Then it will be loadable into the word processing program. You must also take care to store the program from the WP software in ASCII as well. With Scripsit, the syntax is "S, A filename/ext." If you forget this step and attempt to load the program, only a few characters of garbage will appear on the screen. Don't panic. Return to the word processing program, reload the compressed program file, and then reSAVE it in ASCII.

What can you do with a program in text form? For starters, how about formatted listings even slicker than those produced by Lister? The latter was provided both as an illustration and for those who do not have a WP program. However, Scripsit was used to print out the listings reproduced in this book. The word processing software divided up the program lines into pages, and printed a header at the top of each page.

By setting the window of the TRS-80s screen to the same width as the paper being used, it was simple to scroll down through the program text to see when lines were too long. In most programs, line breaks were chosen for clarity, and the next part of a line indented. Scripsit was also used to add spacing betwen REMarks and the program lines preceding and following.

Although, unlike interpreters, original code cannot be tested by a WP program, there are advantages that make them very desirable. Here are a few tips for using Scripsit to streamline your program writing. Those of you with other WP programs can use them as well, by applying the particular syntax and commands of your favored text processor.

1) Put your most-used modules at the tips of your fingers. Several phrases and program lines were written and encased in blocks given unique markers. Then, when a phrase like A\$ = INKEY\$:IF A\$="" GOTO was needed, it was a simple matter to type"@S@Q," which is the Scripsit command for INSERT BLOCK. When asked the name of the block, the letter for the desired phrase was entered. The inserted block has no block markers and the original block remains available for insertion in other positions.

Of course, it would have been simpler to write subroutines and call these, rather than write the code over and over, even automatically. But "easier" is not always as clear for someone attempting to understand a BASIC program. So, in many cases subroutines were avoided. Programming speed did not slow down, however, because of the power of the word processing program.

2) Global searches, replaces, and deletions made writing the programs in this book much easier as well. Halfway through a program, on discovering that a variable name was ill-chosen, it was a simple matter to replace all occurrences in a few seconds. Or, "REM \*\*\*" could be changed to " \*\*\*" almost instantly. Some program screens, written using Screen Editor, had PRINTTAB(0) in a number of places. All the "TAB(0)" appearances could be deleted just as quickly.

Care has to be taken when using this feature, however. A word processor will not check to see if the string being changed is inside quotes or not. Changing all PRINTs to LPRINTs can result in some undesired modifications, such as LPRINT becoming LLPRINT, or "IS YOUR PRINTER ON?" transformed into "IS YOUR LPRINTER ON?"

3) Programs can be "cleaned up" quite easily. It is fast and efficient to zip through a program with a word processor and touch up sloppy coding, change all uppercase prompts to upper and lowercase, or delete undesired spaces. After writing Tabber, I wanted to go through some earlier programs and center prompts. However, some program lines had prompts with (horrors!) embedded spaces:

- 10 PRINT "DO YOU WANT TO:"
- 20 PRINT " 1) RUN A PROGRAM"
- 30 PRINT " 2) EXIT THIS PROGRAM"
- 40 PRINT " ENTER CHOICE:"

While it was easy to type embedded spaces when writing the original program, someone typing in the program from this book would be hard-pressed to count the number of spaces needed to properly format the lines on the screen. By replacing all PRINT "with 'PRINT" one space was closed up. Then, by replacing all 'PRINT" 'with simple PRINT and quotation marks, the excess spaces inside the prompts were elminated. The PRINTAB(T)s could then be put where needed, and Tabber did the rest.

Utilities need not stop at word processors, either. How much

would you pay for a program that would allow you to insert your 10 or 11 most-used subroutines into a program you are writing, at the touch of a key? Would you like to be able to format a disk or produce a backup copy by touching a key, or hit another to call up your word processor, another utility, or BASIC?

There are a number of machine-language programs available that will let you do just that. Many communications programs, SuperScripsit, and other utilities also allow you to define keys. The TRS-80 Model 100 supports redefining the special function keys (but only up to 15 characters), while the TRSDOS 6.0 supplied with the TRS-80 Model 4 has its own keystroke multiplier capabilities.

Those who think that special function keys are best applied as a kind of shorthand to eliminate typing in GOTO or other phrases suffer from a failure of imagination. Programs which allow users to define keys—a program called IRV, for example, allows keys to be defined up to 255 characters—can be very useful in other ways.

The nice thing about general-purpose microcomputers is that they can be custom-configured to perform specialized tasks tailored to the exact needs of the end user. Thanks to sophisticated disk operating systems, patches, special ROMs, and utility programs, many features can be available on power-up or, at most, at the press of a few keys. User-programmable special function keys can do a great deal more than printing out a lengthy BASIC keyword.

Programmable function keys vary in their utility. Some programs allow reprogramming every key on the keyboard, while other systems limit you to only one or two special function keys. You may have tight limits on the number of keystrokes that can be programmed.

Many DOS functions can be compressed into several special function keys. User-programmed keys also allow duplicating (and improving on) other advanced DOS features with lesser operating systems. It is possible to change the default drive number for DIR under many types of DOS, so that every time you enter DIR you see the directory of, say, Drive 1, instead of that of the system disk on Drive 0. Program a key so that a shift key produces "DIR:1." Other keys can be programmed to provide directories of other drives—by hitting two keys instead of seven.

Striking <shift>!on a TRS-80 can yield a COPY command, complete with all the necessary <ENTER>s, to make a full disk copy from Drive 1 to Drive 2. <Shift>X can produce "BOOT," allowing you to reboot the system without hitting the reset key or typing the full word.

You can store several keyboard configurations with many programs. Have one setup for programming, another for operating. While three or tour different configurations might be possible, it is unlikely that an operator would bother to learn all those commands, or mark the key fronts with all possible combinations.

Because some special function key programs allow multipleline programming, there is no reason why you can't define keys with useful subroutines, which can then be added to your program at a single stroke. For example, you can build the routine shown in Fig. 18-1 into a key program.

These two subroutines, because they total less than 255 characters, can be loaded into a single programmable key with a program such as IRV. Then, when writing code that requires an all-purpose disk I/O routine, simply hit <shift>W and the above lines will appear. By keeping the main program line numbers less than 10000, the appending is automatic. If necessary, the standard subroutines can be edited, renumbered, or moved as required. Subroutines aren't the only programs that can be entered as key definitions. Any short program can be stored, such as your gasmileage calculator, a binary/decimal/hex converter, or a program that prints out a frequently used expense report.

Or, try this program for one key:

```
10000 A$=INKEY$:IF A$=" "GOTO 10000
10100 INPUT A:B=B+A:PRINT B:GOTO 10100
10200 FOR N=32 TO 191:PRINT N;" .)";CHR$(N);
" ";:NEXT N:SIOP
```

```
10000
      OPEN "O",1,F$
10100
      PRINT #1.NI
10200
      FOR N =1 TO NI
      PRINT #1,DA$(N):"."
10330
10400
      NEXT N
10500
      CLOSE 1
10600
      RETURN
10700
      OPEN "I",1.F$
10800
      INPUT #1.NI
10900
      FOR N=1 TO NI
11000
      INPUT #1,DA$(N)
      NEXT N
11100
11200
      CLOSE 1
```

RETURN

11300

Fig. 18-1. Example of function-key subroutines.

By hitting the appropriate key, you can call up three or more short programs that can be accessed by typing RUN 10100, etc. Line 10000 is an input line that can be included anywhere in your program. It serves as an example of typical much-used lines that can be drawn from a stock library. Line 10100 simulates an adding machine whenever a series of quick calculations are needed and you require subtotals, or you don't want to use your computer's command mode. Line 10200 provides a quick listing of alphanumerics and graphics, along with their applicable CHR\$ codes for ready access.

User-programmable keys are truly the programmer's friend. Do you frequently renumber your programs during writing to make additional room between lines? Program a key to yield "RENUM 10,10 <ENTER>" (or whatever syntax your BASIC uses) whenever you strike it. Another key could produce a REF variable cross reference listing.

Your uses are limited only by the number of keys available for programming. Having a key produce CMD"DIR" would be the equivalent of the F1 (FILES) special function key on the Model 100. You can come up with other applications not suggested here.

As a program is developed, it is good practice to save the work in progress periodically, either to cassette or disk. Should a power failure occur, hours of work are not lost. With disk-based systems, backups are much easier—so simple, in fact, that many programmers end a session, look at the working disk's directory, and see 10 or more versions of a program tucked away. This system works fine, but few of us can remember what we called the last version. Either we invoke a SYSTEM or CMD "DIR" to check, or play it safe and skip a number or two.

Here's a short program for disk users that can be appended to the end of any program you are working on, and used to automatically SAVE an updated version of a program under an appropriate filename. To use it, remember to turn on your CLOCK. Then, by typing GOTO 30000 at any point during program development, the module will collect the current TIME\$, extract the hour and minutes, and use that to make the filename.

```
30000 B$=TIME$:H$=MID$(B$,10,2)
30010 M$=MID$(B$,13,2)
```

30020 F\$="PROG"+H\$+M\$

30030 SAVE F\$

Save this in ASCII form on your disk, and then APPEND or MERGE it to any program you choose (as long as it does not have line numbers which conflict). You may want to EDIT line 30020, replacing the string "PROG" with any four letters that are more meaningful for the program you are developing. If you want to back up the program to two (or more) disk drives automatically, add the following lines:

```
30025 F1$=F$+":1":F2$=F$+":2"
30035 SAVE F1$:SAVE F2$
```

These two short examples are just two of the utilities you can write yourself to make your programming easier. This book should have given you ideas for many others. The goal of the automatic TRS-80 is to let the computer do all the work, and the programmer do all the creating.

# Appendix Converting Model III Programs to the Model 4

One of the strongest advantages of purchasing a TRS-80 has been the high degree of compatibility of all the computers in the line, at least in the area of BASIC programming. If one avoids exotic file types, such as those added by NEWDOS/80, and obscure commands that aren't needed for most applications, the same Disk BASIC programs written for the TRS-80 Model I in the late 1970s can be used with the Model 4 of the mid-1980s. All such programs can be used on the Model 4 in Model III mode; many will be compatible in Model 4 configuration as well.

This is also true for the programs in this book. They will run as-is on Model I/III computers, or the Model 4 emulating a Model III. All but a few can easily be converted to operate under TRSDOS 6.0 in full-fledged Model 4 mode. Here are a few tips on making the conversion.

Model III and Model 4 BASICs are very similar in many respects. However, there is a difference in the way the two computers handle video displays. Models I and III both store information about what is displayed on the screen in 1,024 memory locations, beginning at 15360. Two of the programs, Screen Editor and Visual Maker, prepare program lines based on what has been written to the screen by the user. These two cannot easily be transferred over to the Model 4 mode. However, both can be used with Model 4 computers in Model III mode, and the resulting programs transferred to Model 4 TRSDOS disks.

Two other programs, Error Trapper and Chain Zapper, are fairly specific for the disk operating systems of Models I and III. All the other programs can and have been transferred to a Model 4 computer, and with only a few changes, successfully run.

Because of the scarcity of Model 4 software, most purchasers of the computer will also have access to a Model III operating system such as TRSDOS 1.3, NEWDOS/80, LDOS, DOSPLUS, MULTIDOS, or a compatible system. Others might have a Model I computer, with the Model 4 as a second, or replacement unit.

Such users might find it convenient to enter the programs in the alternate mode, so they can be tested and compared with the program listings in the book before conversion. Having a Model III operating system will also allow full use of the two programs which do *not* convert easily.

Once you have the programs on a Model I or Model III disk, it is necessary to save them in ASCII form. Then load the TRSDOS 6.0 disk. If only the two built-in drives are available, it may be most convenient to KILL extra files on the TRSDOS disk, to leave room to transfer programs. With a Model 1 disk in Drive 1, simply type REPAIR 1. This will make the necessary changes to the single density Model 1 disk so that TRSDOS 6.0 can read it. Copy all the files from the Model I disk to the TRSDOS 6.0 disk.

If the programs are on a TRSDOS 1.3 disk, the correct command is CONV:1:0 (VIS,Q=N). Because NEWDOS/80 allows changing the disk directory starting "lump," the directories of NEWDOS/80 Model I and Model III disks can differ from those of TRSDOS 1.3. The PDRIVE specifications can vary widely as well. The most foolproof way I have found when using NEWDOS/80 is simply to put the programs on a single density Model I formatted disk, and load into the Model 4 using REPAIR. For both Model I and Model III, the NEWDOS/80 PDRIVE should be set to TI=A TD=A.

Once the program is deposited on a Model 4 disk, I recommend going to BASIC and loading "GLOBAL" first of all. Check through the program to make sure that there is a space between "PRINT" and "TAB," and "LINE" and "INPUT." That, and the necessity to make sure that THEN is always included in IF statements, are the only changes necessary to all the rest of the programs. By checking over Global Replacer first, you can use it to process all of the other programs automatically. We told you that the TRS-80 would do all of the work.

Next, do as outlined above. Run Global Replacer on each of the

other programs. Because Model 4 BASIC allows long variable names, the spaces between variables and keywords are *not* optional. If you happened to leave out spaces while typing in programs from the book, the programs will test OK in Model III mode, but will not operate under the Model 4 operating system. Global Replacer can SEARCH for each occurrence of PRINTTAB and replace it with PRINT TAB. It will do the same with LINEINPUT and LINE INPUT. Then run the programs to see how they work. In most cases, all will be fairly well.

Small syntax errors may appear. In Model I/III BASIC, a statement like "IF N=2 PRINT "N=2" is perfectly legal. Many of us who have been using these computers for long periods will leave out the THEN, even if it appears in a program listing. The Model 4 requires THEN. If a Syntax Error appears in a line containing IF, look to make sure that THEN is in the proper place.

Another typical problem will be in long variable names. Under Model I/III BASIC, only the first two characters are significant. The Model 4 allows up to 40 characters. Those accustomed to the earlier Radio Shack computers sometimes get sloppy and abbreviate variable names to only two characters in some places, but use longer names in others.

Look at Translator in Chapter 16. The variable array SPAN\$(n) is defined, but under the Model I/III mode it can be referred to as SP\$(n), as it is. However, the Model 4 will see those as two different arrays. Check your programs carefully to make sure that some of the longer variable names have not been misspelled or changed from place to place in the programs.

CLEAR is used to allocate string space in the TRS-80 Model I/III computers. With the Model 4 such space is allocated dynamically, so this statement clears the value of all variables and closes all OPEN files (like RUN). It can also be used to set the highest memory location for BASIC, and the amount of stack space. Since none of these functions are required for the programs in this book, you can DELETE the CLEAR statements if you wish.

ROW, which is sometimes used as a counter for two dimensional arrays (e.g., ADDRESS\$(ROW,COL)) is actually a keyword under Model 4 BASIC. ROW(y) returns the row position of the cursor. A few other words which could safely be used as variables with the Model I/III are implemented as statements in the Model 4. These include SWAP, WAIT, WHILE, WEND, and WRITE. Extra operators, such as MOD, are provided as well. None are used in any of the programs in this book.

Because screen displays are 80 columns in the Model 4, and only 64 columns in the Model I/III, a different arrangement may appear in some programs. Most programs with PRINTTAB(n) will operate just fine, but the tabbing will not center the text on the screen. There will be extra space at the right side. This is no great problem. If you wish, you can go through the programs and substitute PRINTTAB(T) for those prompts you would like centered. Then run Tabber on the target program.

Programs using PRINT@will definitely cause strange screens. PRINT@ works with the Model 4, but the locations are different. You may have to fiddle with the few PRINT@statements to come up with new locations which look better.

Some changes will have to be made to Menu Master to account for the differences in your operating systems. The program calls various DOS functions, using NEWDOS/80 syntax. Instead of CMD"DIR" you will want to use SYSTEM"DIR" under TRSDOS 6.0. Use BACKUP instead of COPY, DEVICE instead of PDRIVE or SYSTEM, and make other changes as desired.

### Index

Chain file, 173

## A ALISTE (list) command, 182 Apparat, Inc., 180 Applications generators, 1

Arrow keys, ASCII codes for, 45 ASCII, 2

AYUDA (help) command, 183

B

BASIC, compatible file types of, 1 BASIC, Hispanic, 181 BASIC, limitations of, 181 BASIC, Model III vs Model 4, 220

C

CLEAR statement, 81, 202, 222
CMD"O" command, NEWDOS/80, 201
Command, sort, 201
Commodore computers, 213
Compiler, Microsoft BASIC, 42
Compiler, pseudo-, 181
Compilers, error correction using, 213
CONV command, 221
CORRA command, 182
Cottage Software, 85

D

Database management program, 60 Default values, establishing, 15 Delimiters, common, 87 Delimiters, string, 7, 134 DFS function, NEWDOS/80, 174 Documentation, software, 22 DOSPLUS, 221

F

Editing, line-oriented, 213
Editing, screen-oriented, 213
Editors, text, 212
EOF marker, 7
Error messages, Disk BASIC, 157
Error messages, Level II BASIC, 157
Errors, causes of, 84
Error trapping, 157
ERR variable, 171

F

File, chain, 173
File format, ASCII, 2
File format, non-compressed, 2
File format, tokenized, 2
FILE NOT FOUND error, 172
"Fog index", 200
Frames, graphic, 112
Frames, text, 112
Function keys, defining, 216
Function keys, utility of, 216

G

"Garbage collection", 201

8.8

"Hot zone", 23

ILLEGAL DIRECT error, 171
ILLEGAL FUNCTION CALLerror, 171
INKEY\$ loop, 29, 111, 140
Input routines, menu, 35
Interpreters, advantages of, 212
Interrupt, error trapping, 171

К

Keys, function, 216

L

LDOS, 221
Leading spaces, elimination of, 44
Loop, INKEY\$, 29, 45
Loop, strobing, 29
Lowercase letters, ASCII codes for,
140

#### М

Marker, EOF, 7 Menu, all-purpose, 139 Menu, letter-oriented, 35 Menu, numeric, 35 Menu input routines, 35 Microsoft BASIC Compiler, 42 Model 4, speed capability of, 202 MOD operator, Model 4, 222 MULTIDOS, 221

#### N

Names, variable, 85 NEWDOS/80, 85, 173, 220 NEXT WITHOUT FOR error, 157 NUEVO (new) command, 182 Null string, 29, 87

0

ON ERROR GOTO statement, 171 OUT OF DATA error, 171 OUT statement, Model 4, 202

#### P

PACKER (utility program), 85
Parsing, 29
PDRIVE specification, 221
PEEK function, 56, 132
POKE statement, 56
PRINT® statement, incompatibility of, 223
Program, database management, 60
Program, functional definition of, 57

Program, database management, 60 Program, functional definition of, 57 Programming, modular, 60 Programming, structured, 60 Programs, spelling checker, 84 Pseudo-compiler, 181 REDO FROM START message, 36 REM, abbreviation for, 8 REPAIR function, 221 RESUME statement, 172

S

SAVE command, "A" option, 3 Scripsit, 2 Scripsit, SAVE syntax for, 214 Scripsit, using, 214 Slide show, 112 Software, difficulty of, documentation 22

Spelling checkers, 84 String, null, 29, 87 Strobing loop, 29 SuperScripsit, 216 SUPERZAP, NEWDOS/80, 174 SWAP statement, Model 4, 222

1

TAB(T) routine, 34
Text editors, 212
THEN statement, omitting, 222
Tokenization, BASIC, 2
Trailing spaces, elimination of, 44
TRS-80 Model 100, 213

v

VAL function, 81 Values, default, 15 Variable names, significant characters of, 85 Variables, DB Starter program, 61 Variables, defined as integers, 202 Variables, Documenter program, 23 Variables, ERR, 171 Variables, Global Replacer program, Variables, Instructions program, 101 Variables, Lister program, 153 Variables, Menu Master program, 141 Variables, Program Proofer program, Variables, Program Titler program, 16 Variables, REM-over program, 10 Variables, Screen Editor program, 45 Variables, Show Assembler program, 113 Variables, Tabber program, 37 Variables, Translator program, 183 Variables, Visual Maker program, 113 Variables, Word Counter program, 3 Video memory, starting address of, 220

WAIT statement, Model 4, 222
WHILE-WEND statement, Model 4, 222
Word, functional definition of, 7

Word, standard size of, 7

Word delimiters, 203 Word processor, utility of, 212 WRITE statement, Model 4, 222

**Z** ZAP, NEWDOS/80, 173

226 Edited by Steven Moore.

### Teach Your TRS-80™ to Program Itself!

If you are intrigued with the possibilities of the programs included in Teach Your TRS-80™ to Program Itself (TAB BOOK No.) 1798, you should definitely consider having the ready-to-run disk containing the software applications. This software is guaranteed free of manufacturer's defects. (If you have any problems, return the disk within 30 days, and we'll send you a new one.) Not only will you save the time and effort of typing the programs, the disk eliminates the possibility of errors that can prevent the programs from functioning. Interested?

Available on 40-track double-density disk for Radio Shack TRS-80 Models III and 4, with 48 K and two disk drives at \$19.95 for each disk plus \$1.00 each shipping and handling.

| I'm interestedin the ready-to-run disk for Teach Your TRS-80™ to Program Itself. Send me:      |  |  |  |  |  |
|--|--|--|--|--|--|
| disk for TRS-80 Models III, and 4, 48K(6051S)<br>TAB BOOKS catalog                             |  |  |  |  |  |
| Check/Money Order enclosed for \$  |  |  |  |  |  |
| plus \$1.00 shipping and handling for each disk ordered  |  |  |  |  |  |
| VISA MasterCard  |  |  |  |  |  |
| Account No Expires   |  |  |  |  |  |
| Name   |  |  |  |  |  |
| Address  |  |  |  |  |  |
| City   |  |  |  |  |  |
| Signature  |  |  |  |  |  |
| Mail To: TAB BOOKS INC. P.O. Box 40 Blue Ridge Summit, PA 17214                                |  |  |  |  |  |
| (Pa. Add 6% sales tax. Orders outside U.S. must be prepared with international money orders in |  |  |  |  |  |
| U.S. dollars.)   |  |  |  |  |  |
| TAB 1798   |  |  |  |  |  |

## Teach Your TRS-80™ to Program Itself!

by David Busch

Why spend hours writing program code when your TRS-80 can do it for you? It's true . . . using the 16 programs included in this unique guide, your TRS-80 Model I, III, or 4 can generate ASCII files that can be loaded and run as programs.

Here is everything you need to put your TRS-80 to work composing subroutines, completing programs, setting TABs, or giving existing software new capabilities and power. Each program is fully explained

and is readily adaptable to most TRS-80s.

Let "Visual Maker" design a custom "slide" to appear on the screen of your TRS-80, using graphics and alphanumeric characters. You decide how long the "slide" should be displayed, add more "slides" and soon your TRS-80 will write complete BASIC programs to display the "slides" as you requested! Want to center your screen output for prompts and other messages? Tabber can do it for you, quickly and easily.

All the groundwork for producing "user friendly" programs with title screens, menus, and on-screen directions that are centered and polished-looking can be done by the programs in this book. Think of the time you can save using "Proofer" to find your misspelled keywords, mismatched parentheses, and other errors before you run

a program!

If you're a beginning programmer, "Error Message" can't be beat. It will locate your errors, plus, detail exactly what the problem is and

give you tips for tracking down every bug!

If you write programs to sell, this guide will save you countless hours of programming. (In fact, the author used some of these programs to write other programs included in this guide.) Similarly, you can take ideas and suggestions here and develop programs of your own that will streamline your BASIC development work.

The possibilities are virtually unlimited once you put these innovative programs to use. Whether you're a novice or an experienced programmer, this invaluable guide is guaranteed to save you hours of

time on every program you write.

David Busch has been involved in the computer industry since 1974 as a reporter, computerist, and author of more than 300 articles and seven books on computer-related topics.

## TAB TAB BOOKS Inc.

Blue Ridge Summit, Pa. 17214

Send for FREE TAB Catalog describing over 750 current titles in print.

FPT > \$11.50

IZBN 0-8306-1798-1